

BD

(19) World Intellectual Property
Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
28 October 2004 (28.10.2004)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2004/092166 A2

(51) International Patent Classification⁷: C07D 471/00

(74) Common Representative: MERCK & CO., INC.; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US).

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/US2004/010851

(22) International Filing Date: 9 April 2004 (09.04.2004)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:

60/463,089 15 April 2003 (15.04.2003) US
60/510,352 10 October 2003 (10.10.2003) US

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): MERCK & CO., INC. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): BURGEY, Christopher, S. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US). DENG, Zhengwu, J. [CN/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US). NGUYEN, Diem, N. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US). PAONE, Daniel, V. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US). SHAW, Anthony, W. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US). WILLIAMS, Theresa, M. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US).

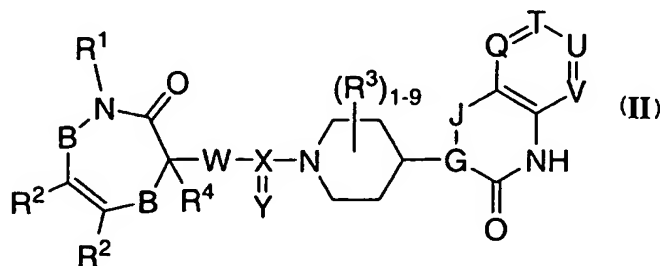
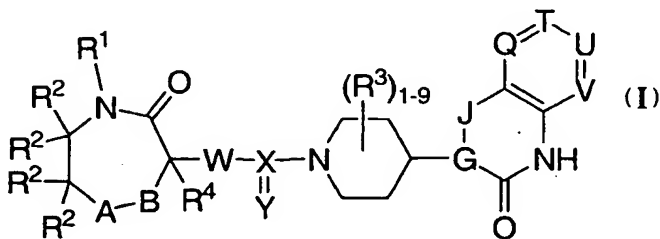
(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: CGRP RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS



(57) Abstract: The present invention is directed to compounds of Formula (I) and Formula (II) (where variables R¹, R², R³, R⁴, A, B, G, J, Q, T, U, V, W, X and Y are as defined herein) useful as antagonists of CGRP receptors and useful in the treatment or prevention of diseases in which the CGRP is involved, such as headache, migraine and cluster headache. The invention is also directed to pharmaceutical compositions comprising these compounds and the use of these compounds and compositions in the prevention or treatment of such diseases in which CGRP is involved.

WO 2004/092166 A2

TITLE OF THE INVENTION

CGRP RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

5 CGRP (Calcitonin Gene-Related Peptide) is a naturally occurring 37-amino acid peptide that is generated by tissue-specific alternate processing of calcitonin messenger RNA and is widely distributed in the central and peripheral nervous system. CGRP is localized predominantly in sensory afferent and central neurons and mediates several biological actions, including vasodilation. CGRP is expressed in alpha- and beta-forms that vary by one and three
10 amino acids in the rat and human, respectively. CGRP-alpha and CGRP-beta display similar biological properties. When released from the cell, CGRP initiates its biological responses by binding to specific cell surface receptors that are predominantly coupled to the activation of adenylyl cyclase. CGRP receptors have been identified and pharmacologically evaluated in several tissues and cells, including those of brain, cardiovascular, endothelial, and smooth
15 muscle origin.

 CGRP is a potent vasodilator that has been implicated in the pathology of cerebrovascular disorders such as migraine and cluster headache. In clinical studies, elevated levels of CGRP in the jugular vein were found to occur during migraine attacks (Goadsby et al., Ann. Neurol., 1990, 28, 183-187). CGRP activates receptors on the smooth muscle of
20 intracranial vessels, leading to increased vasodilation, which is thought to be the major source of headache pain during migraine attacks (Lance, Headache Pathogenesis: Monoamines, Neuropeptides, Purines and Nitric Oxide, Lippincott-Raven Publishers, 1997, 3-9). The middle meningeal artery, the principle artery in the dura mater, is innervated by sensory fibers from the trigeminal ganglion which contain several neuropeptides, including CGRP. Trigeminal ganglion
25 stimulation in the cat resulted in increased levels of CGRP, and in humans, activation of the trigeminal system caused facial flushing and increased levels of CGRP in the external jugular vein (Goadsby et al., Ann. Neurol., 1988, 23, 193-196). Electrical stimulation of the dura mater in rats increased the diameter of the middle meningeal artery, an effect that was blocked by prior administration of CGRP(8-37), a peptide CGRP antagonist (Williamson et al., Cephalalgia,
30 1997, 17, 525-531). Trigeminal ganglion stimulation increased facial blood flow in the rat, which was inhibited by CGRP(8-37) (Escott et al., Brain Res. 1995, 669, 93-99). Electrical stimulation of the trigeminal ganglion in marmoset produced an increase in facial blood flow that could be blocked by the non-peptide CGRP antagonist BIBN4096BS (Doods et al., Br. J. Pharmacol., 2000, 129, 420-423). Thus the vascular effects of CGRP may be attenuated, prevented or

reversed by a CGRP antagonist. In recently reported clinical trials, the CGRP receptor antagonist BIBN 4096 BS was reported to be effective in treating acute attacks of migraine (Olesen et al., N. Engl. J. Med. 2004, 350:1104-1110).

CGRP-mediated vasodilation of rat middle meningeal artery was shown to
 5 sensitize neurons of the trigeminal nucleus caudalis (Williamson et al., The CGRP Family: Calcitonin Gene-Related Peptide (CGRP), Amylin, and Adrenomedullin, Landes Bioscience, 2000, 245-247). Similarly, distention of dural blood vessels during migraine headache may sensitize trigeminal neurons. Some of the associated symptoms of migraine, including extra-
 cranial pain and facial allodynia, may be the result of sensitized trigeminal neurons (Burstein et
 10 al., Ann. Neurol. 2000, 47, 614-624). A CGRP antagonist may be beneficial in attenuating, preventing or reversing the effects of neuronal sensitization.

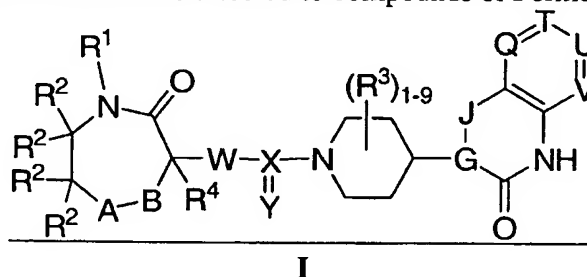
The ability of the compounds of the present invention to act as CGRP antagonists makes them useful pharmacological agents for disorders that involve CGRP in humans and animals, but particularly in humans. Such disorders include migraine and cluster headache
 15 (Doods, Curr Opin Inves Drugs, 2001, 2 (9), 1261-1268; Edvinsson et al., Cephalalgia, 1994, 14, 320-327); chronic tension type headache (Ashina et al., Neurology, 2000, 14, 1335-1340); pain (Yu et al., Eur. J. Pharm., 1998, 347, 275-282); chronic pain (Hulsebosch et al., Pain, 2000, 86, 163-175); neurogenic inflammation and inflammatory pain (Holzer, Neurosci., 1988, 24, 739-768; Delay-Goyet et al., Acta Physiol. Scand. 1992, 146, 537-538; Salmon et al., Nature
 20 Neurosci., 2001, 4(4), 357-358); eye pain (May et al. Cephalalgia, 2002, 22, 195-196), tooth pain (Awawdeh et al., Int. Endocrin. J., 2002, 35, 30-36), non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus (Molina et al., Diabetes, 1990, 39, 260-265); vascular disorders; inflammation (Zhang et al., Pain, 2001, 89, 265), arthritis, bronchial hyperreactivity, asthma, (Foster et al., Ann. NY Acad. Sci., 1992, 657, 397-404; Schini et al., Am. J. Physiol., 1994, 267, H2483-H2490; Zheng et al., J.
 25 Virol., 1993, 67, 5786-5791); shock, sepsis (Beer et al., Crit. Care Med., 2002, 30 (8), 1794-1798); opiate withdrawal syndrome (Salmon et al., Nature Neurosci., 2001, 4(4), 357-358) morphine tolerance (Menard et al., J. Neurosci., 1996, 16 (7), 2342-2351); hot flashes in men and women (Chen et al., Lancet, 1993, 342, 49; Spetz et al., J. Urology, 2001, 166, 1720-1723); allergic dermatitis (Wallengren, Contact Dermatitis, 2000, 43 (3), 137-143); psoriasis;
 30 encephalitis, brain trauma, ischaemia, stroke, epilepsy, and neurodegenerative diseases (Rohrenbeck et al., Neurobiol. of Disease 1999, 6, 15-34); skin diseases (Geppetti and Holzer, Eds., Neurogenic Inflammation, 1996, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL), neurogenic cutaneous redness, skin rosaceousness and erythema; tinnitus (Herzog et al., J. Membrane Biology, 2002, 189(3), 225); inflammatory bowel disease, irritable bowel syndrome, (Hoffman et al.

Scandinavian Journal of Gastroenterology, 2002, 37(4) 414-422) and cystitis. Of particular importance is the acute or prophylactic treatment of headache, including migraine and cluster headache.

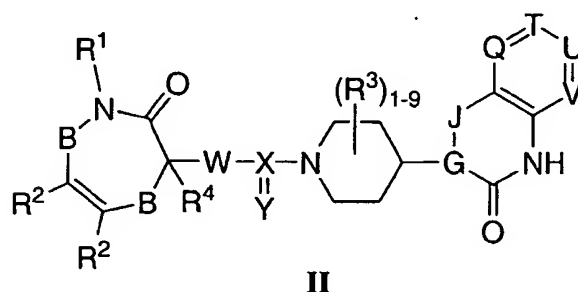
The present invention relates to compounds that are useful as ligands for CGRP receptors, in particular antagonists for CGRP receptors, processes for their preparation, their use in therapy, pharmaceutical compositions comprising them and methods of therapy using them.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to compounds of Formula I:



and Formula II:

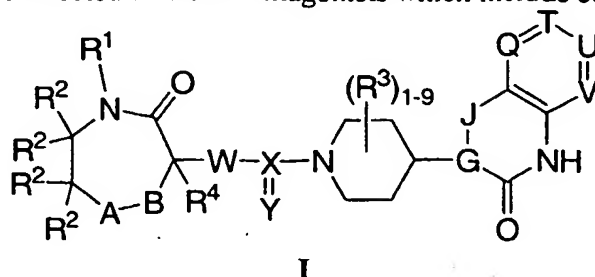


(where variables R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , A, B, G, J, Q, T, U, V, W, X and Y are as defined herein)

useful as antagonists of CGRP receptors and useful in the treatment or prevention of diseases in which the CGRP is involved, such as headache, migraine and cluster headache. The invention is also directed to pharmaceutical compositions comprising these compounds and the use of these compounds and compositions in the prevention or treatment of such diseases in which CGRP is involved.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to CGRP antagonists which include compounds of Formula I:



wherein:

A is a bond, $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

B is $(C(R^2)_2)_n$;

R^1 is selected from:

- 1) H, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_2 - C_6 alkenyl, C_2 - C_6 alkynyl, C_3 - C_6 cycloalkyl, and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
 - a) C_1 - C_6 alkyl,
 - b) C_3 - C_6 cycloalkyl,
 - c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - f) $(F)_pC_1$ - C_3 alkyl,
 - g) halogen,
 - h) OR^4 ,
 - i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,

- 5
- j) CO_2R^4 ,
 - k) $(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
 - l) $\text{O}(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
 - m) $\text{N}(\text{R}^4)(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
 - n) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})(\text{CO})\text{R}^{11}$,
 - o) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})(\text{CO})\text{OR}^{11}$,
 - p) $\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
 - q) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{11}$,
 - r) $\text{S}(\text{O})_m\text{R}^{10}$,

10

 - s) CN ,
 - t) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
 - u) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})(\text{CO})\text{NR}^4\text{R}^{11}$, and,
 - v) $\text{O}(\text{CO})\text{R}^4$;

15

2) aryl or heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:

20

 - a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
 - b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
 - c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,

25

 - f) $(\text{F})_p\text{C}_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 - g) halogen,
 - h) OR^4 ,
 - i) $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_s\text{OR}^4$,

30

 - j) CO_2R^4 ,
 - k) $(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
 - l) $\text{O}(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
 - m) $\text{N}(\text{R}^4)(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
 - n) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})(\text{CO})\text{R}^{11}$,

- o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
- p) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- q) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
- r) $S(O)_mR^{10}$,
- s) CN ,
- t) $NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- u) $N(R^{10})(CO)NR^4R^{11}$, and
- v) $O(CO)R^4$;

10 R^2 is independently selected from:

- 1) H, C_0 - C_6 alkyl, C_2 - C_6 alkenyl, C_2 - C_6 alkynyl, C_3 -6 cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:

- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
- b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
- g) halogen,
- h) OR^4 ,
- i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,
- j) CO_2R^4 ,
- k) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- l) $O(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- m) $N(R^4)(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- n) $N(R^{10})(CO)R^{11}$,
- o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
- p) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$.

- 5
- q) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
 - r) $S(O)_mR^{10}$,
 - s) CN,
 - t) $NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - u) $N(R^{10})(CO)NR^4R^{11}$, and,
 - v) $O(CO)R^4$;
- 2) aryl or heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
- 10
- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
 - b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
 - c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents
 - 15 where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 - g) halogen,
 - 20 h) OR^4 ,
 - i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,
 - j) CO_2R^4 ,
 - k) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - l) $O(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - 25 m) $N(R^4)(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - n) $N(R^{10})(CO)R^{11}$,
 - o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
 - p) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - q) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
 - 30 r) $S(O)_mR^{10}$,
 - s) CN,
 - t) $NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - u) $N(R^{10})(CO)NR^4R^{11}$, and
 - v) $O(CO)R^4$,

or, any two independent R^2 on the same or adjacent atoms may be joined together to form a ring selected from cyclobutyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexenyl, cyclohexyl, phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, thiazolinyl, oxazolyl, oxazolinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, imidazolidinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholine, thiomorpholine S-oxide, thiomorpholine S-dioxide, azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydropyridyl, furanyl, dihydrofuranyl, dihydropyranyl and piperazinyl;

- 10 R^{10} and R^{11} are independently selected from: H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $(F)_pC_{1-6}$ alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and benzyl, unsubstituted or substituted with halogen, hydroxy or C_1-C_6 alkoxy, where R^{10} and R^{11} may be joined together to form a ring selected from: azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, or morpholinyl, which is unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ;

- 15 R^4 is independently selected from: H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $(F)_pC_{1-6}$ alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl and benzyl, unsubstituted or substituted with halogen, hydroxy or C_1-C_6 alkoxy;

W is O, NR^4 or $C(R^4)_2$;

20

X is C or S;

Y is O, $(R^4)_2$, NCN, NSO_2CH_3 , $NCONH_2$, or Y is O_2 when X is S;

- 25 R^6 is independently selected from H and:

- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
- b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- 30 d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,

- g) halogen,
 h) OR^4 ,
 i) $O(CH_2)_5OR^4$,
 j) CO_2R^4 .
 5 k) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 l) $O(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 m) $N(R^4)(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 n) $N(R^{10})(CO)R^{11}$,
 o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
 10 p) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 q) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
 r) $S(O)_mR^{10}$,
 s) CN,
 t) $NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 15 u) $N(R^{10})(CO)NR^4R^{11}$, and
 v) $O(CO)R^4$;

G-J is selected from: N, $N-C(R^5)_2$, $C=C(R^5)$, $C=N$; $C(R^5)$, $C(R^5)-C(R^5)_2$, $C(R^5)-C(R^5)_2-$
 $C(R^5)_2$, $C=C(R^5)-C(R^5)_2$, $C(R^5)-C(R^5)=C(R^5)$, $C(R^5)-C(R^5)_2-N(R^5)$, $C=C(R^5)-N(R^5)$,
 20 $C(R^5)-C(R^5)=N$, $C(R^5)-N(R^5)-C(R^5)_2$, $C=N-C(R^5)_2$, $C(R^5)-N=C(R^5)$, $C(R^5)-N(R^5)-N(R^5)$,
 $C=N-N(R^5)$, $N-C(R^5)_2-C(R^5)_2$, $N-C(R^5)=C(R^5)$, $N-C(R^5)_2-N(R^5)$, $N-C(R^5)=N$, $N-N(R^5)-$
 $C(R^5)_2$ and $N-N=C(R^5)$;

Q, T, U and V are each independently a carbon atom or a nitrogen atom wherein at least one but
 25 no more than three of Q, T, U and V are nitrogen atoms, of which one may be optionally an N-
 oxide, and wherein when any of Q, T, U, or V is a carbon atom it is unsubstituted or substituted
 where the substituents are independently selected from R^6 ;

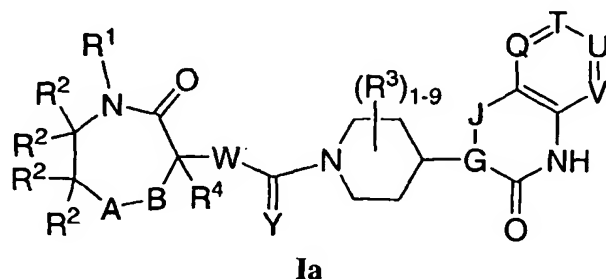
R^5 is independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_3 alkyl, CN, OR^4 ,
 30 $N(R^4)_2$ and CO_2R^4 ;

R^3 is independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_3 alkyl, F, CN and
 CO_2R^4 ;

- p is 0 to $2q+1$, for a substituent with q carbons;
 m is 0, 1 or 2;
 n is 0 or 1;
 5 s is 1, 2 or 3;

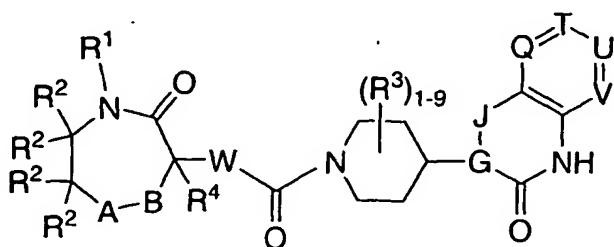
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual diastereomers thereof.

- Further embodiments of the invention are CGRP antagonists of Formula I which
 10 include compounds of the Formula Ia:



- 15 wherein:
 A is a bond, $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;
 B is $(C(R^2)_2)_n$;
 Y is O or NCN; and
 n is 0 or 1; and
 20 R^1 , R^2 , R^4 , W, Y, R^3 , G-J, Q, T, U, V and m are as defined in Formula I;
 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

Still further embodiments of the invention are CGRP antagonists of Formula I
 which include compounds of the Formula Ib:



Ib

wherein:

A is a bond, $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

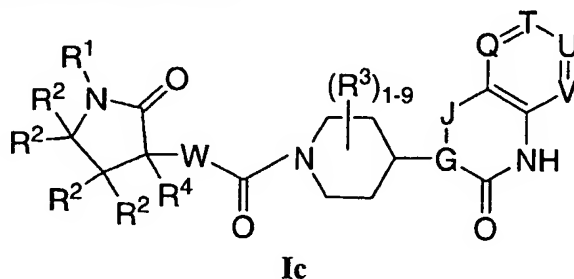
5 B is $(C(R^2)_2)_n$;

n is 0 or 1; and

R^1 , R^2 , R^4 , W, R^3 , G-J, Q, T, U, V and m are as defined in Formula I;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

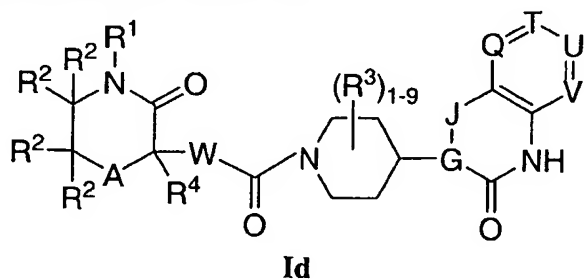
10 Additional embodiments of the invention are CGRP antagonists of Formula I which include compounds of the Formula Ic:



wherein:

15 R^1 , R^2 , R^4 , W, R^3 , G-J, Q, T, U, V and m are as defined in Formula I; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

Additional embodiments of the invention are CGRP antagonists of Formula I which also include compounds of the Formula Id:



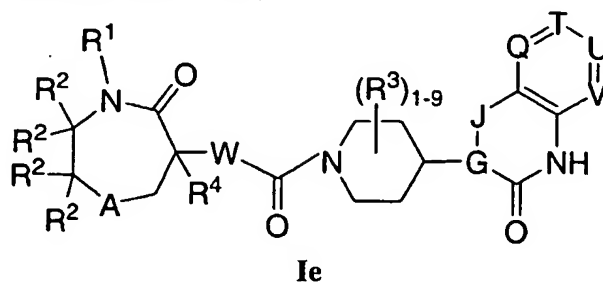
wherein:

A is $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

R^1 , R^2 , R^4 , W, R^3 , G-J, Q, T, U, V and m are as defined in Formula I;

25 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

Additional embodiments of the invention are CGRP antagonists of Formula I which include compounds of the Formula Ie:



wherein:

A is $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

R^1 , R^2 , R^4 , W, R^3 , G-J, Q, T, U, V and m are defined in Formula I;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

Further embodiments of the invention are CGRP antagonists of Formulae Ia –Ie,

wherein:

R^1 is selected from:

- 1) H, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_3 - C_6 cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
 - a) C_1 - C_6 alkyl,
 - b) C_3 - C_6 cycloalkyl,
 - c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 - g) halogen,
 - h) OR^4 ,
 - i) $O(CH_2)_5OR^4$,
 - j) CO_2R^4 .

- k) CN,
- l) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$, and
- m) $\text{O}(\text{CO})\text{R}^4$; and

5 2) aryl or heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:

- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
- b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
- c) $(\text{F})_p\text{C}_{1-3}$ alkyl,
- 10 d) halogen,
- e) OR^4 ,
- f) CO_2R^4 ,
- g) $(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
- h) $\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
- 15 i) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{11}$,
- j) $\text{S}(\text{O})_m\text{R}^4$,
- k) CN,
- l) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$, and,
- m) $\text{O}(\text{CO})\text{R}^4$;

20

R^2 is selected from:

- 1) H , $\text{C}_0\text{-C}_6$ alkyl, $\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6$ alkynyl, $\text{C}_3\text{-6}$ cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
- 25 a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
- b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents
- 30 where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- f) $(\text{F})_p\text{C}_{1-3}$ alkyl,
- g) halogen,

- h) OR^4 ,
- i) $O(CH_2)_5OR^4$,
- j) CO_2R^4 ,
- k) $S(O)_mR^4$,
- l) CN ,
- m) $NR^{10}R^{11}$, and
- n) $O(CO)R^4$; and

2) aryl or heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with one more substituents independently selected from:

- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
- b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
- c) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
- d) halogen,
- e) OR^4 ,
- f) CO_2R^4 ,
- g) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- h) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- i) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
- j) $S(O)_mR^4$,
- k) CN ,
- l) $NR^{10}R^{11}$, and
- m) $O(CO)R^4$,

or, any two independent R^2 on the same or adjacent atoms may be joined together to form a ring selected from cyclobutyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexenyl, cyclohexyl, phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, thiazoliny, oxazolyl, oxazoliny, imidazolyl, imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrroliny, morpholiny, thiomorpholine, thiomorpholine S-oxide, thiomorpholine S-dioxide, azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydropyridyl, furanyl, dihydrofuranyl, dihydropyranyl and piperazinyl;

R^{10} and R^{11} are independently selected from: H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $(F)_pC_{1-6}$ alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl and benzyl, unsubstituted or substituted with halogen, hydroxy or C_1-C_6 alkoxy,

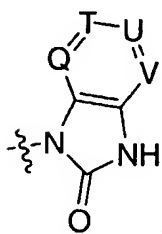
where R^{10} and R^{11} may be joined together to form a ring selected from: azetidiny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny and morpholiny, which is unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4

- 5 R^4 is independently selected from: H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $(F)_p C_{1-6}$ alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl and benzyl, unsubstituted or substituted with halogen, hydroxy or C_1-C_6 alkoxy;

W is O, NR^4 or $C(R^4)_2$;

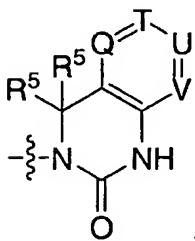
- 10 G-J is selected from:

N, such that when G-J is so defined the following structure forms:



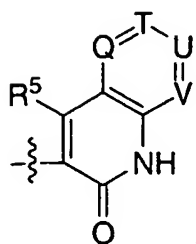
15

$N-C(R^5)_2$, such that when G-J is so defined the following structure forms:

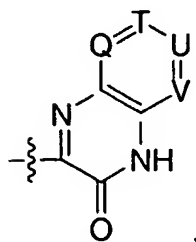


20

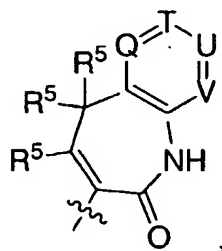
$C=C(R^5)$, such that when G-J is so defined the following structure forms:



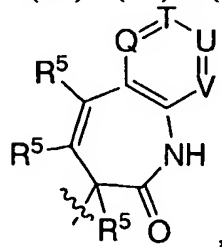
C=N, such that when G-J is so defined the following structure forms:



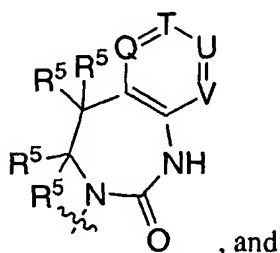
C=C(R⁵)-C(R⁵)₂, such that when G-J is so defined the following structure forms:



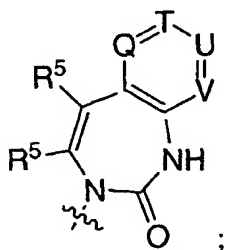
C(R⁵)-C(R⁵)=C(R⁵), such that when G-J is so defined the following structure forms:



$N-C(R^5)_2-C(R^5)_2$, such that when G-J is so defined the following structure forms:



5 $N-C(R^5)=C(R^5)$, such that when G-J is so defined the following structure forms:



10 Q, T, U and V are each independently a carbon atom or a nitrogen atom wherein at least one but no more than three of Q, T, U and V are nitrogen atoms, of which one may be optionally an N-oxide, and wherein when any of Q, T, U, or V is a carbon atom it is unsubstituted or substituted where the substituents are independently selected from R^6 ;

15 R^6 is independently selected from H and:

- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
- b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
- c) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
- d) halogen,
- 20 e) OR^4 ,
- f) CO_2R^4 ,
- g) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- h) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- i) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
- 25 j) $S(O)_mR^4$,

- k) CN,
- l) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$ and
- m) $\text{O}(\text{CO})\text{R}^4$; and

- 5 R^5 is independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_3 alkyl, CN, OR^4 , $\text{N}(\text{R}^4)_2$ and CO_2R^4 ;

R^3 is independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_3 alkyl, F, CN and CO_2R^4 ;

- 10 p is 0 to $2q+1$, for a substituent with q carbons
 m is 0 to 2;
 s is 1 to 3;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

- 15 Still further embodiments of the invention are CGRP antagonists of Formulae Ia –
 1e, wherein:

R^1 is selected from:

- 20 1) H, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_3 -6 cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted
 with one or more substituents independently selected from:
 a) C_1 -6 alkyl,
 b) C_3 -6 cycloalkyl,
 c) phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents
 25 where the substituents are independently selected from
 R^4 ,
 d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents
 where the substituents are independently selected from
 R^4 ,
 30 and where heteroaryl is selected from:
 imidazole, isoxazole, oxazole, pyrazine, pyrazole, pyridazine, pyridine,
 pyrimidine, and thiazole;

- e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 , and where heterocycle is selected from:
 azetidine, dioxane, dioxolane, morpholine, oxetane, piperazine, piperidine,
 5 pyrrolidine, tetrahydrofuran, and tetrahydropyran;
 f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 g) halogen,
 h) OR^4 ,
 i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,
 10 j) CO_2R^4 ,
 k) CN,
 l) $NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 m) $O(CO)R^4$;
- 2) aryl or heteroaryl, selected from:
 phenyl, imidazole, isoxazole, oxazole, pyrazine, pyrazole, pyridazine, pyridine,
 pyrimidine, and thiazole,
 unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected
 from:
 20 a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
 b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
 c) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 d) halogen,
 e) OR^4 ,
 25 f) CO_2R^4 ,
 g) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 h) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 i) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
 j) $S(O)_mR^4$,
 30 k) CN,
 l) $NR^{10}R^{11}$, and
 m) $O(CO)R^4$;

R^2 is selected from:

- 1) H, C₀-C₆ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
- a) C₁₋₆ alkyl,
 - b) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl,
 - c) phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴,
 - d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴,
and where heteroaryl is selected from: benzimidazole, benzothiophene, furan, imidazole, indole, isoxazole, oxazole, pyrazine, pyrazole, pyridazine, pyridine, pyrimidine, pyrrole, thiazole, thiophene, and triazole;
 - e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴, and where heterocycle is selected from: azetidine, imidazolidine, imidazoline, isoxazoline, isoxazolidine, morpholine, oxazoline, oxazolidine, oxetane, pyrazolidine, pyrazoline, pyrroline, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydropyran, thiazoline, and thiazolidine;
 - f) (F)_pC₁₋₃ alkyl,
 - g) halogen,
 - h) OR⁴,
 - i) O(CH₂)₅OR⁴,
 - j) CO₂R⁴,
 - k) CN,
 - l) NR¹⁰R¹¹, and
 - m) O(CO)R⁴; and
- 2) aryl or heteroaryl, selected from:
phenyl, benzimidazole, benzothiophene, furan, imidazole, indole, isoxazole, oxazole, pyrazine, pyrazole, pyridazine, pyridine, pyrimidine, pyrrole, thiazole, thiophene, and triazole;

unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:

- a) C₁₋₆ alkyl,
- b) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl,
- 5 c) (F)_pC₁₋₃ alkyl,
- d) halogen,
- e) OR⁴,
- f) CO₂R⁴,
- 10 g) (CO)NR¹⁰R¹¹,
- h) SO₂NR¹⁰R¹¹,
- i) N(R¹⁰)SO₂R¹¹,
- j) S(O)_mR⁴,
- k) CN,
- l) NR¹⁰R¹¹, and
- 15 m) O(CO)R⁴,

or, any two independent R² on the same or adjacent atoms may be joined together to form a ring selected from cyclobutyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexenyl, cyclohexyl, phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, thiazolinyl, oxazolyl, oxazolinyl, imidazolyl, 20 imidazolinyl, imidazolidinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholine, thiomorpholine S-oxide, thiomorpholine S-dioxide, azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydropyridyl, furanyl, dihydrofuranyl, dihydropyranyl and piperazinyl,

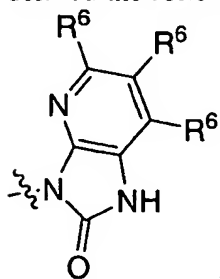
25 R¹⁰ and R¹¹ are independently selected from: H, C₁₋₆ alkyl, (F)_pC₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl and benzyl, unsubstituted or substituted with halogen, hydroxy or C_{1-C6} alkoxy, where R¹⁰ and R¹¹ may be joined together to form a ring selected from: azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl and morpholinyl, which is unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴;

30 R⁴ is independently selected from: H, C₁₋₆ alkyl, (F)_pC₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl and phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted with hydroxy or C_{1-C6} alkoxy;

W is NR⁴ or C(R⁴)₂;

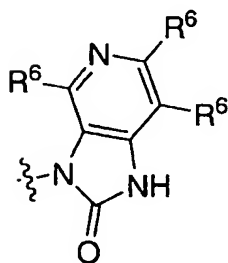
5 G-J and Q-T-U-V are as follows:

G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $N=C(R^6)-C(R^6)=C(R^6)$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:



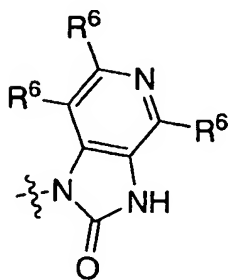
10

G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $C(R^6)=N-C(R^6)=C(R^6)$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:

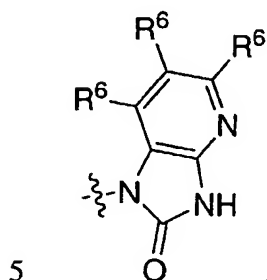


15

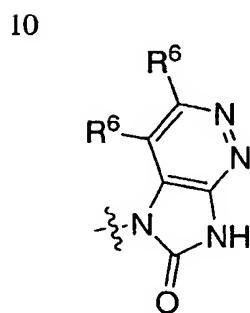
G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $C(R^6)=C(R^6)-N=C(R^6)$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:



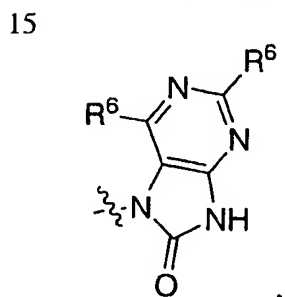
G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $C(R^6)=C(R^6)-C(R^6)=N$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:



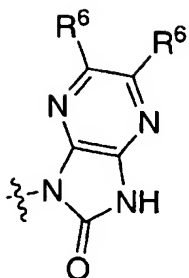
G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $C(R^6)=C(R^6)-N=N$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:



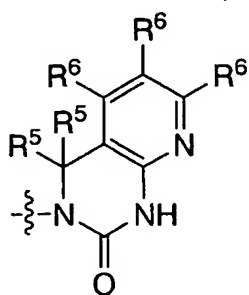
G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $C(R^6)=N-C(R^6)=N$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:



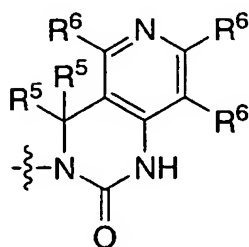
G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $N=C(R^6)-C(R^6)=N$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:



- 5 G-J is $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)-\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:

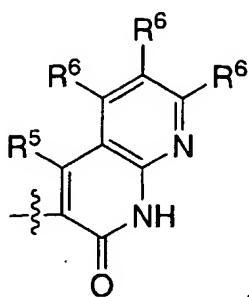


- 10 G-J is $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:



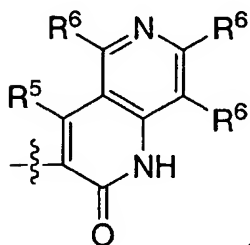
15

- G-J is $\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{R}^5)$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)-\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:



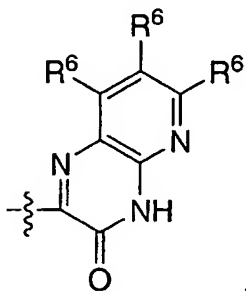
G-J is C=C(R⁵) and Q-T-U-V is C(R⁶)=N-C(R⁶)=C(R⁶), such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:

5



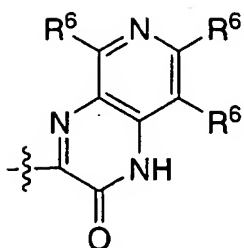
G-J is C=N and Q-T-U-V is C(R⁶)=C(R⁶)-C(R⁶)=N, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:

10



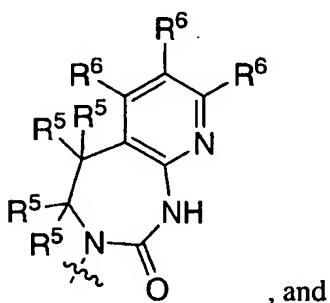
G-J is C=N and Q-T-U-V is C(R⁶)=N-C(R⁶)=C(R⁶), such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:

15



G-J is $N-C(R^5)_2-C(R^5)_2$ and Q-T-U-V is $C(R^6)=C(R^6)-C(R^6)=N$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:

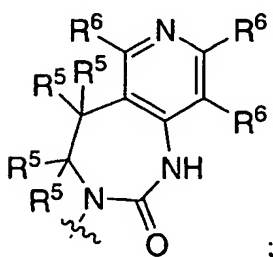
5



, and

G-J is $N-C(R^5)_2-C(R^5)_2$ and Q-T-U-V is $C(R^6)=N-C(R^6)=C(R^6)$, such that when G-J and Q-T-U-V are so defined the following structure forms:

10



;

R^6 is independently selected from H and:

15

- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
- b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
- c) $(F)_p C_{1-3}$ alkyl,
- d) halogen,
- e) OR^4 ,
- f) CO_2R^4 .

20

- g) $(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
- h) $\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
- i) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{11}$,
- j) $\text{S}(\text{O})_m\text{R}^4$,
- 5 k) CN ,
- l) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$, and
- m) $\text{O}(\text{CO})\text{R}^4$;

10 R^5 is independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_3 alkyl, CN , OR^4 , $\text{N}(\text{R}^4)_2$ and CO_2R^4 ;

R^3 is independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_3 alkyl, F, CN and CO_2R^4 ;

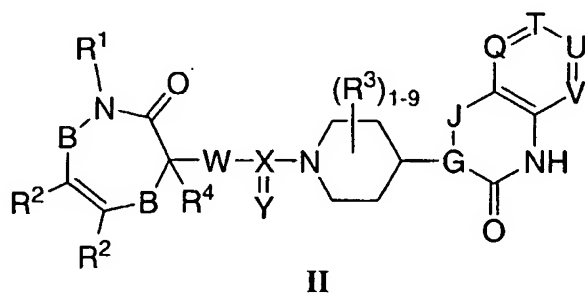
p is 0 to $2q+1$, for a substituent with q carbons

15 m is 0 to 2;

s is 1 to 3;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

20 Another embodiment of the invention includes CGRP antagonists which include compounds of Formula II:



25 wherein:

B , G , J , Q , T , U , V , W , X , Y , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 are as defined in Formula I, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual diastereomers thereof.

It is to be understood that where one or more of the above recited structures or substructures recite multiple substituents having the same designation each such variable may be the same or different from each similarly designated variable. For example, R² is recited four times in Formula I, and each R² in Formula I may independently be any of the substructures defined under R². The invention is not limited to structures and substructures wherein each R² must be the same for a given structure. The same is true with respect to any variable appearing multiple time in a structure or substructure.

The compounds of the present invention may contain one or more asymmetric centers and can thus occur as racemates and racemic mixtures, single enantiomers, diastereomeric mixtures and individual diastereomers. Additional asymmetric centers may be present depending upon the nature of the various substituents on the molecule. Each such asymmetric center will independently produce two optical isomers and it is intended that all of the possible optical isomers and diastereomers in mixtures and as pure or partially purified compounds are included within the ambit of this invention. The present invention is meant to comprehend all such isomeric forms of these compounds.

Some of the compounds described herein contain olefinic double bonds, and unless specified otherwise, are meant to include both E and Z geometric isomers.

The independent syntheses of these diastereomers or their chromatographic separations may be achieved as known in the art by appropriate modification of the methodology disclosed herein. Their absolute stereochemistry may be determined by the x-ray crystallography of crystalline products or crystalline intermediates which are derivatized, if necessary, with a reagent containing an asymmetric center of known absolute configuration.

If desired, racemic mixtures of the compounds may be separated so that the individual enantiomers are isolated. The separation can be carried out by methods well known in the art, such as the coupling of a racemic mixture of compounds to an enantiomerically pure compound to form a diastereomeric mixture, followed by separation of the individual diastereomers by standard methods, such as fractional crystallization or chromatography. The coupling reaction is often the formation of salts using an enantiomerically pure acid or base. The diastereomeric derivatives may then be converted to the pure enantiomers by cleavage of the added chiral residue. The racemic mixture of the compounds can also be separated directly by chromatographic methods utilizing chiral stationary phases, which methods are well known in the art.

Alternatively, any enantiomer of a compound may be obtained by stereoselective synthesis using optically pure starting materials or reagents of known configuration by methods well known in the art.

As will be appreciated by those of skill in the art, not all of the R¹⁰ and R¹¹ substituents are capable of forming a ring structure. Moreover, even those substituents capable of ring formation may or may not form a ring structure.

Also as appreciated by those of skill in the art, halo or halogen as used herein are intended to include chloro, fluoro, bromo and iodo.

As used herein, "alkyl" is intended to mean linear, branched and cyclic structures having no double or triple bonds. Thus C₁₋₆alkyl is defined to identify the group as having 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6 carbons in a linear or branched arrangement, such that C₁₋₆alkyl specifically includes methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, iso-propyl, n-butyl, iso-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl and hexyl. "Cycloalkyl" is an alkyl, part or all of which which forms a ring of three or more atoms. C₀ or C₀alkyl is defined to identify the presence of a direct covalent bond.

The term "alkenyl" means linear or branched structures and combinations thereof, of the indicated number of carbon atoms, having at least one carbon-to-carbon double bond, wherein hydrogen may be replaced by an additional carbon-to-carbon double bond. C₂₋₆alkenyl, for example, includes ethenyl, propenyl, 1-methylethenyl, butenyl and the like.

The term "alkynyl" means linear or branched structures and combinations thereof, of the indicated number of carbon atoms, having at least one carbon-to-carbon triple bond. Thus C₂₋₆alkynyl is defined to identify the group as having 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6 carbons in a linear or branched arrangement, such that C₂₋₆alkynyl specifically includes 2-hexynyl and 2-pentynyl.

As used herein, "aryl" is intended to mean any stable monocyclic or bicyclic carbon ring of up to 7 members in each ring, wherein at least one ring is aromatic. Examples of such aryl elements include phenyl, naphthyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, or biphenyl.

The term "heterocycle" or "heterocyclic", as used herein except where noted, represents a stable 5- to 7-membered monocyclic- or stable 8- to 11-membered bicyclic heterocyclic ring system which is either saturated or unsaturated, and which consists of carbon atoms and from one to four heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O and S, and wherein the nitrogen and sulfur heteroatoms may optionally be oxidized, and the nitrogen heteroatom may optionally be quaternized, and including any bicyclic group in which any of the above-defined heterocyclic rings is fused to a benzene ring. The heterocyclic ring may be attached at any heteroatom or carbon atom which results in the creation of a stable structure. Examples of such heterocyclic groups include, but are not limited to, azetidine, chroman,

dihydrofuran, dihydropyran, dioxane, dioxolane, hexahydroazepine, imidazolidine, imidazolidinone, imidazoline, imidazolinone, indoline, isochroman, isoindoline, isothiazoline, isothiazolidine, isoxazoline, isoxazolidine, morpholine, morpholinone, oxazoline, oxazolidine, oxazolidinone, oxetane, 2-oxohexahydroazepin, 2-oxopiperazine, 2-oxopiperidine, 2-oxopyrrolidine, piperazine, piperidine, pyran, pyrazolidine, pyrazoline, pyrrolidine, pyrroline, quinuclidine, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydropyran, thiamorpholine, thiazoline, thiazolidine, thiomorpholine and N-oxides thereof.

The term "heteroaryl", as used herein except where noted, represents a stable 5- to 7-membered monocyclic- or stable 9- to 10-membered fused bicyclic heterocyclic ring system which contains an aromatic ring, any ring of which may be saturated, such as piperidinyl, partially saturated, or unsaturated, such as pyridinyl, and which consists of carbon atoms and from one to four heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O and S, and wherein the nitrogen and sulfur heteroatoms may optionally be oxidized, and the nitrogen heteroatom may optionally be quaternized, and including any bicyclic group in which any of the above-defined heterocyclic rings is fused to a benzene ring. The heterocyclic ring may be attached at any heteroatom or carbon atom which results in the creation of a stable structure. Examples of such heteroaryl groups include, but are not limited to, benzimidazole, benzisothiazole, benzisoxazole, benzofuran, benzothiazole, benzothiophene, benzotriazole, benzoxazole, carboline, cinnoline, furan, furazan, imidazole, indazole, indole, indolizine, isoquinoline, isothiazole, isoxazole, naphthyridine, oxadiazole, oxazole, phthalazine, pteridine, purine, pyran, pyrazine, pyrazole, pyridazine, pyridine, pyrimidine, pyrrole, quinazoline, quinoline, quinoxaline, tetrazole, thiadiazole, thiazole, thiophene, triazine, triazole, and N-oxides thereof.

The term "alkoxy," as in C₁-C₆ alkoxy, is intended to refer to include alkoxy groups of from 1 to 6 carbon atoms of a straight, branched and cyclic configuration. Examples include methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, cyclopropyloxy, cyclohexyloxy and the like.

The phrase "pharmaceutically acceptable" is employed herein to refer to those compounds, materials, compositions, and/or dosage forms which are, within the scope of sound medical judgment, suitable for use in contact with the tissues of human beings and animals without excessive toxicity, irritation, allergic response, or other problem or complication, commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio.

As used herein, "pharmaceutically acceptable salts" refer to derivatives wherein the parent compound is modified by making acid or base salts thereof. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable salts include, but are not limited to, mineral or organic acid salts of basic residues such as amines; alkali or organic salts of acidic residues such as carboxylic acids;

and the like. The pharmaceutically acceptable salts include the conventional non-toxic salts or the quaternary ammonium salts of the parent compound formed, for example, from non-toxic inorganic or organic acids. For example, such conventional non-toxic salts include those derived from inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulfuric, sulfamic, phosphoric, nitric and the like; and the salts prepared from organic acids such as acetic, propionic, succinic, glycolic, stearic, lactic, malic, tartaric, citric, ascorbic, pantoic, maleic, hydroxymaleic, phenylacetic, glutamic, benzoic, salicylic, sulfanilic, 2-acetoxybenzoic, fumaric, toluenesulfonic, methanesulfonic, ethane disulfonic, oxalic, isethionic, and the like.

The number of certain variables present in certain instances is defined in terms of the number of carbons present. For example, variable "p" is occasionally defined as follows: "p is 0 to 2q+1, for a substituent with q carbons". Where the substituent is "(F)_pC₁₋₃ alkyl" this means that when there is one carbon, there are 2(1) + 1 = 3 fluorines. When there are two carbons, there are 2(2) + 1 = 5 fluorines, and when there are three carbons there are 2(3) + 1 = 7 fluorines.

When variables G and J are presented or depicted as "G-J" this indicates that G and J together represent a particular moiety. G-J may represent a single ring atom or various arrangements of multiple ring atoms. For instance, G-J is at times herein defined as the single ring atom N, and is at other times defined as multiple ring atoms C=C(R⁵), C=N, and so forth.

Similarly, when variables Q, T, U and V are presented or depicted as "Q-T-U-V" this indicates that these variables together represent a particular moiety. Here, Q-T-U-V may represent various arrangements of multiple ring atoms, for instance N=C(R⁶)-C(R⁶)=C(R⁶), C(R⁶)=N-C(R⁶)=C(R⁶) and C(R⁶)=C(R⁶)-N=C(R⁶), among others.

When the compound of the present invention is basic, salts may be prepared from pharmaceutically acceptable non-toxic acids, including inorganic and organic acids. Such acids include acetic, benzenesulfonic, benzoic, camphorsulfonic, citric, ethanesulfonic, fumaric, gluconic, glutamic, hydrobromic, hydrochloric, isethionic, lactic, maleic, malic, mandelic, methanesulfonic, mucic, nitric, pantoic, pantothenic, phosphoric, succinic, sulfuric, tartaric, p-toluenesulfonic acid, and the like. In one aspect of the invention the salts are citric, hydrobromic, hydrochloric, maleic, phosphoric, sulfuric, fumaric, and tartaric acids. It will be understood that, as used herein, references to the compounds of Formula I are meant to also include the pharmaceutically acceptable salts.

Exemplifying the invention is the use of the compounds disclosed in the Examples and herein. Specific compounds within the present invention include a compound

which selected from the group consisting of the compounds disclosed in the following Examples and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof and individual diastereomers thereof.

The subject compounds are useful in a method of antagonism of CGRP receptors in a patient such as a mammal in need of such antagonism comprising the administration of an effective amount of the compound. The present invention is directed to the use of the compounds disclosed herein as antagonists of CGRP receptors. In addition to primates, especially humans, a variety of other mammals can be treated according to the method of the present invention.

Another embodiment of the present invention is directed to a method for the treatment, control, amelioration, or reduction of risk of a disease or disorder in which the CGRP receptor is involved in a patient that comprises administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound that is an antagonist of CGRP receptors.

The present invention is further directed to a method for the manufacture of a medicament for antagonism of CGRP receptors activity in humans and animals comprising combining a compound of the present invention with a pharmaceutical carrier or diluent.

The subject treated in the present methods is generally a mammal, for example a human being, male or female, in whom antagonism of CGRP receptor activity is desired. The term "therapeutically effective amount" means the amount of the subject compound that will elicit the biological or medical response of a tissue, system, animal or human that is being sought by the researcher, veterinarian, medical doctor or other clinician. As used herein, the term "treatment" refers both to the treatment and to the prevention or prophylactic therapy of the mentioned conditions, particularly in a patient who is predisposed to such disease or disorder.

The term "composition" as used herein is intended to encompass a product comprising the specified ingredients in the specified amounts, as well as any product which results, directly or indirectly, from combination of the specified ingredients in the specified amounts. Such term in relation to pharmaceutical composition, is intended to encompass a product comprising the active ingredient(s), and the inert ingredient(s) that make up the carrier, as well as any product which results, directly or indirectly, from combination, complexation or aggregation of any two or more of the ingredients, or from dissociation of one or more of the ingredients, or from other types of reactions or interactions of one or more of the ingredients. Accordingly, the pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention encompass any composition made by admixing a compound of the present invention and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. By "pharmaceutically acceptable" it is meant the carrier, diluent or excipient

must be compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation and not deleterious to the recipient thereof.

The terms "administration of" and or "administering a" compound should be understood to mean providing a compound of the invention or a prodrug of a compound of the invention to the individual in need of treatment.

The utility of the compounds in accordance with the present invention as antagonists of CGRP receptor activity may be demonstrated by methodology known in the art. Inhibition of the binding of ^{125}I -CGRP to receptors and functional antagonism of CGRP receptors were determined as follows:

NATIVE RECEPTOR BINDING ASSAY: The binding of ^{125}I -CGRP to receptors in SK-N-MC cell membranes was carried out essentially as described (Edvinsson *et al.* (2001) *Eur. J. Pharmacol.* **415**, 39-44). Briefly, membranes (25 μg) were incubated in 1 mL of binding buffer [10 mM HEPES, pH 7.4, 5 mM MgCl_2 and 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA)] containing 10 pM ^{125}I -CGRP and antagonist. After incubation at room temperature for 3 h, the assay was terminated by filtration through GFB glass fibre filter plates (Millipore) that had been blocked with 0.5% polyethyleneimine for 3 h. The filters were washed three times with ice-cold assay buffer, then the plates were air dried. Scintillation fluid (50 μL) was added and the radioactivity was counted on a Topcount (Packard Instrument). Data analysis was carried out by using Prism and the K_i was determined by using the Cheng-Prusoff equation (Cheng & Prusoff (1973) *Biochem. Pharmacol.* **22**, 3099-3108).

NATIVE RECEPTOR FUNCTIONAL ASSAY: SK-N-MC cells were grown in minimal essential medium (MEM) supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, 2 mM L-glutamine, 0.1 mM non-essential amino acids, 1 mM sodium pyruvate, 100 units/mL penicillin and 100 $\mu\text{g}/\text{mL}$ streptomycin at 37 °C, 95% humidity, and 5% CO_2 . For cAMP assays, cells were plated at 5×10^5 cells/well in 96-well poly-D-lysine-coated plates (Becton-Dickinson) and cultured for ~ 18 h before assay. Cells were washed with phosphate-buffered saline (PBS, Sigma) then pre-incubated with 300 μM isobutylmethylxanthine in serum-free MEM for 30 min at 37 °C. Antagonist was added and the cells were incubated for 10 min before the addition of CGRP. The incubation was continued for another 4 min, then the cells were washed with PBS and processed for cAMP determination according to the manufacturer's recommended protocol. Maximal stimulation over basal was defined by using 100 nM CGRP. Dose-response curves were generated by using Prism. Dose-ratios (DR) were calculated and used to construct full Schild plots (Arunlakshana & Schild (1959) *Br. J. Pharmacol.* **14**, 48-58).

RECOMBINANT RECEPTOR: Human CRLR (Genbank accession number L76380) was subcloned into the expression vector pIRESHyg2 (BD Biosciences Clontech) as a 5'NheI and 3' PmeI fragment. Human RAMP1 (Genbank accession number AJ001014) was subcloned into the expression vector pIRESpuro2 (BD Biosciences Clontech) as a 5'NheI and 3'NotI fragment. 293 cells (human embryonic kidney cells; ATCC #CRL-1573) were cultured in DMEM with 4.5 g/L glucose, 1 mM sodium pyruvate and 2 mM glutamine supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS), 100 units/mL penicillin and 100 ug/ml streptomycin, and maintained at 37 °C and 95% humidity. Cells were subcultured by treatment with 0.25% trypsin with 0.1% EDTA in HBSS. Stable cell line generation was accomplished by co-transfecting 10 ug of DNA with 30 ug Lipofectamine 2000 (Invitrogen) in 75 cm² flasks. CRLR and RAMP1 expression constructs were co-transfected in equal amounts. Twenty-four hours after transfection the cells were split 1:5 and selective medium (growth medium + 300 ug/mL hygromycin and 1 ug/mL puromycin) was added the following day. A clonal cell line was generated by single cell deposition utilizing a FACS Vantage SE (Becton Dickinson). Growth medium was adjusted to 150 ug/ml hygromycin and 0.5 ug/mL puromycin for cell propagation.

RECOMBINANT RECEPTOR BINDING ASSAY: Cells expressing recombinant human CRLR/RAMP1 were washed with PBS and harvested in harvest buffer containing 50 mM HEPES, 1 mM EDTA and Complete protease inhibitors (Roche). The cell suspension was disrupted with a laboratory homogenizer and centrifuged at 48,000 g to isolate membranes. The pellets were resuspended in harvest buffer plus 250 mM sucrose and stored at -70 °C. For binding assays, 10 ug of membranes were incubated in 1 mL binding buffer (10 mM HEPES, pH 7.4, 5 mM MgCl₂, and 0.2% BSA) for 3 hours at room temperature containing 10 pM ¹²⁵I-hCGRP (Amersham Biosciences) and inhibitor. The assay was terminated by filtration through 96-well GFB glass fiber filter plates (Millipore) that had been blocked with 0.05% polyethyleneimine. The filters were washed 3 times with ice-cold assay buffer (10 mM HEPES, pH 7.4). Scintillation fluid was added and the plates were counted on a Topcount (Packard). Non-specific binding was determined and the data analysis was carried out with the apparent dissociation constant (K_i) determined by using a non-linear least squares fitting the bound CPM data to the equation below:

$$Y_{\text{obsd}} = \frac{(Y_{\text{max}} - Y_{\text{min}})(\%I_{\text{max}} - \%I_{\text{min}} / 100) + Y_{\text{min}} + (Y_{\text{max}} - Y_{\text{min}})(100 - \%I_{\text{max}} / 100)}{1 + ([\text{Drug}] / K_i (1 + [\text{Radiolabel}] / K_d))^{nH}}$$

Where Y is observed CPM bound, Y_{max} is total bound counts, Y_{min} is non specific bound counts, (Y_{max} - Y_{min}) is specific bound counts, % I_{max} is the maximum percent inhibition, % I_{min} is the minimum percent inhibition, radiolabel is the probe, and the K_d is the apparent

dissociation constant for the radioligand for the receptor as determined by Hot saturation experiments.

RECOMBINANT RECEPTOR FUNCTIONAL ASSAY: Cells were plated in complete growth medium at 85,000 cells/well in 96-well poly-D-lysine coated plates (Corning) and cultured for ~ 19 h before assay. Cells were washed with PBS and then incubated with inhibitor for 30 min at 37 °C and 95% humidity in Cellgro Complete Serum-Free/Low-Protein medium (Mediatech, Inc.) with L-glutamine and 1 g/L BSA. Isobutyl-methylxanthine was added to the cells at a concentration of 300 uM and incubated for 30 min at 37 °C. Human α -CGRP was added to the cells at a concentration of 0.3 nM and allowed to incubate at 37 °C for 5 min. After α -CGRP stimulation the cells were washed with PBS and processed for cAMP determination utilizing the two-stage assay procedure according to the manufacturer's recommended protocol (cAMP SPA direct screening assay system; RPA 559; Amersham Biosciences). Dose response curves were plotted and IC₅₀ values determined from a 4-parameter logistic fit as defined by the equation $y = ((a-d)/(1+(x/c)^b) + d$, where y = response, x = dose, a = max response, d = min response, c = inflection point and b = slope.

In particular, the compounds of the following examples had activity as antagonists of the CGRP receptor in the aforementioned assays, generally with a K_i or IC₅₀ value of less than about 50 μ M. Such a result is indicative of the intrinsic activity of the compounds in use as antagonists of CGRP receptors.

The ability of the compounds of the present invention to act as CGRP antagonists makes them useful pharmacological agents for disorders that involve CGRP in humans and animals, but particularly in humans.

The compounds of the present invention have utility in treating, preventing, ameliorating, controlling or reducing the risk of one or more of the following conditions or diseases: headache; migraine; cluster headache; chronic tension type headache; pain; chronic pain; neurogenic inflammation and inflammatory pain; neuropathic pain; eye pain; tooth pain; diabetes; non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus; vascular disorders; inflammation; arthritis; bronchial hyperreactivity, asthma; shock; sepsis; opiate withdrawal syndrome; morphine tolerance; hot flashes in men and women; allergic dermatitis; encephalitis; brain trauma; epilepsy; neurodegenerative diseases; skin diseases; neurogenic cutaneous redness, skin rosaceousness and erythema; tinnitus; inflammatory bowel disease, irritable bowel syndrome, cystitis; and other conditions that may be treated or prevented by antagonism of CGRP receptors. Of particular importance is the acute or prophylactic treatment of headache, including migraine and cluster headache.

The subject compounds are further useful in a method for the prevention, treatment, control, amelioration, or reduction of risk of the diseases, disorders and conditions noted herein.

5 The subject compounds are further useful in a method for the prevention, treatment, control, amelioration, or reduction of risk of the aforementioned diseases, disorders and conditions in combination with other agents.

The compounds of the present invention may be used in combination with one or more other drugs in the treatment, prevention, control, amelioration, or reduction of risk of diseases or conditions for which compounds of Formula I or the other drugs may have utility, 10 where the combination of the drugs together are safer or more effective than either drug alone. Such other drug(s) may be administered, by a route and in an amount commonly used therefor, contemporaneously or sequentially with a compound of Formula I. When a compound of Formula I is used contemporaneously with one or more other drugs, a pharmaceutical composition in unit dosage form containing such other drugs and the compound of Formula I is 15 preferred. However, the combination therapy may also include therapies in which the compound of Formula I and one or more other drugs are administered on different overlapping schedules. It is also contemplated that when used in combination with one or more other active ingredients, the compounds of the present invention and the other active ingredients may be used in lower doses than when each is used singly. Accordingly, the pharmaceutical compositions of the 20 present invention include those that contain one or more other active ingredients, in addition to a compound of Formula I.

For example, the present compounds may be used in conjunction with an anti-inflammatory or analgesic agent or an anti-migraine agent, such as an ergotamine or 5-HT₁ agonists, especially a 5-HT_{1B/1D} agonist, for example sumatriptan, naratriptan, zolmitriptan, 25 eletriptan, almotriptan, frovatriptan, donitriptan, and rizatriptan; a cyclooxygenase inhibitor, such as a selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor, for example rofecoxib, etoricoxib, celecoxib, valdecoxib or paracoxib; a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agent or a cytokine-suppressing anti-inflammatory agent, for example with a compound such as aspirin, ibuprofen, ketoprofen, fenoprofen, naproxen, indomethacin, sulindac, meloxicam, piroxicam, tenoxicam, lomoxicam, 30 ketorolac, etodolac, mefenamic acid, meclofenamic acid, flufenamic acid, tolfenamic acid, diclofenac, oxaprozin, apazone, nimesulide, nabumetone, tenidap, etanercept, tolmetin, phenylbutazone, oxyphenbutazone, diflunisal, salsalate, olsalazine or sulfasalazine and the like; or a steroidal analgesic. Similarly, the instant compounds may be administered with a pain

reliever such as acetaminophen, phenacetin, codeine, fentanyl, sufentanil, methadone, acetyl methadol, buprenorphine or morphine.

Additionally, the present compounds may be used in conjunction with an interleukin inhibitor, such as an interleukin-1 inhibitor; an NK-1 receptor antagonist, for example
5 aprepitant; an NMDA antagonist; an NR2B antagonist; a bradykinin-1 receptor antagonist; an adenosine A1 receptor agonist; a sodium channel blocker, for example lamotrigine; an opiate agonist such as levomethadyl acetate or methadyl acetate; a lipoxygenase inhibitor, such as an inhibitor of 5-lipoxygenase; an alpha receptor antagonist, for example indoramin; an alpha
10 receptor agonist; a vanilloid receptor antagonist; an mGluR5 agonist, antagonist or potentiator; a GABA A receptor modulator, for example acamprosate calcium; nicotinic antagonists or agonists including nicotine; muscarinic agonists or antagonists; a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor, for example fluoxetine, paroxetine, sertraline, duloxetine, escitalopram, or citalopram; a tricyclic antidepressant, for example amitriptyline, doxepin, protriptyline, desipramine, trimipramine, or imipramine; a leukotriene antagonist, for example montelukast or zafirlukast; an
15 inhibitor of nitric oxide or an inhibitor of the synthesis of nitric oxide.

Also, the present compounds may be used in conjunction with ergot alkaloids, for example ergotamine, ergonovine, methylegonovine, metergoline, ergoloid mesylates, dihydroergotamine, dihydroergocornine, dihydroergocristine, dihydroergocryptine, dihydro-1-ergocryptine, dihydro- θ -ergocryptine, ergotoxine, ergocornine, ergocristine,
20 ergocryptine, 1-ergocryptine, θ -ergocryptine, ergosine, ergostane, bromocriptine, or methysergide.

Additionally, the present compounds may be used in conjunction with a beta-adrenergic antagonist such as timolol, propanolol, atenolol, or nadolol, and the like; a MAO inhibitor, for example phenelzine; a calcium channel blocker, for example flunarizine,
25 nimodipine, lomerizine, verapamil, nifedipine, prochlorperazine or gabapentin; neuroleptics such as olanzapine and quetiapine; an anticonvulsant such as topiramate, zonisamide, tonabersat, carabersat or divalproex sodium; an angiotensin II antagonist, for example losartan and candesartan cilexetil; an angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor such as lisinopril; or botulinum toxin type A.

30 The present compounds may be used in conjunction with a potentiator such as caffeine, an H₂-antagonist, simethicone, aluminum or magnesium hydroxide; a decongestant such as phenylephrine, phenylpropanolamine, pseudoephedrine, oxymetazoline, epinephrine, naphazoline, xylometazoline, propylhexedrine, or levo-desoxy-ephedrine; an antitussive such as

codeine, hydrocodone, caramiphen, carbetapentane, or dextromethorphan; a diuretic; a prokinetic agent such as metoclopramide or domperidone, and a sedating or non-sedating antihistamine.

In a particularly preferred embodiment the present compounds are used in conjunction with an anti-migraine agent, such as: an ergotamine; a 5-HT₁ agonist, especially a 5-HT_{1B/1D} agonist, in particular, sumatriptan, naratriptan, zolmitriptan, eletriptan, almotriptan, frovatriptan, donitriptan and rizatriptan; and a cyclooxygenase inhibitor, such as a selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor, in particular, rofecoxib, etoricoxib, celecoxib, meloxicam, valdecoxib or paracoxib.

The above combinations include combinations of a compound of the present invention not only with one other active compound, but also with two or more other active compounds. Likewise, compounds of the present invention may be used in combination with other drugs that are used in the prevention, treatment, control, amelioration, or reduction of risk of the diseases or conditions for which compounds of the present invention are useful. Such other drugs may be administered, by a route and in an amount commonly used therefor, contemporaneously or sequentially with a compound of the present invention. When a compound of the present invention is used contemporaneously with one or more other drugs, a pharmaceutical composition containing such other drugs in addition to the compound of the present invention is preferred. Accordingly, the pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention include those that also contain one or more other active ingredients, in addition to a compound of the present invention.

The weight ratio of the compound of the present invention to the other active ingredient(s) may be varied and will depend upon the effective dose of each ingredient. Generally, an effective dose of each will be used. Thus, for example, when a compound of the present invention is combined with another agent, the weight ratio of the compound of the present invention to the other agent will generally range from about 1000:1 to about 1:1000, or from about 200:1 to about 1:200. Combinations of a compound of the present invention and other active ingredients will generally also be within the aforementioned range, but in each case, an effective dose of each active ingredient should be used.

In such combinations the compound of the present invention and other active agents may be administered separately or in conjunction. In addition, the administration of one element may be prior to, concurrent to, or subsequent to the administration of other agent(s), and via the same or different routes of administration.

The compounds of the present invention may be administered by oral, parenteral (e.g., intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intravenous, ICV, intracisternal injection or infusion,

subcutaneous injection, or implant), by inhalation spray, nasal, vaginal, rectal, sublingual, or topical routes of administration and may be formulated, alone or together, in suitable dosage unit formulations containing conventional non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, adjuvants and vehicles appropriate for each route of administration. In addition to the treatment of warm-blooded animals the compounds of the invention are effective for use in humans.

The pharmaceutical compositions for the administration of the compounds of this invention may conveniently be presented in dosage unit form and may be prepared by any of the methods well known in the art of pharmacy. All methods include the step of bringing the active ingredient into association with the carrier which constitutes one or more accessory ingredients.

In general, the pharmaceutical compositions are prepared by uniformly and intimately bringing the active ingredient into association with a liquid carrier or a finely divided solid carrier or both, and then, if necessary, shaping the product into the desired formulation. In the pharmaceutical composition the active compound is included in an amount sufficient to produce the desired effect upon the process or condition of diseases. As used herein, the term "composition" is intended to encompass a product comprising the specified ingredients in the specified amounts, as well as any product which results, directly or indirectly, from combination of the specified ingredients in the specified amounts.

The pharmaceutical compositions containing the active ingredient may be in a form suitable for oral use, for example, as tablets, troches, lozenges, aqueous or oily suspensions, dispersible powders or granules, emulsions, hard or soft capsules, or syrups or elixirs. Compositions intended for oral use may be prepared according to any method known to the art for the manufacture of pharmaceutical compositions and such compositions may contain one or more agents selected from the group consisting of sweetening agents, flavoring agents, coloring agents and preserving agents in order to provide pharmaceutically elegant and palatable preparations. Tablets contain the active ingredient in admixture with non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable excipients which are suitable for the manufacture of tablets. These excipients may be for example, inert diluents, such as calcium carbonate, sodium carbonate, lactose, calcium phosphate or sodium phosphate; granulating and disintegrating agents, for example, corn starch, or alginic acid; binding agents, for example starch, gelatin or acacia; and lubricating agents, for example magnesium stearate, stearic acid or talc. The tablets may be uncoated or they may be coated by known techniques to delay disintegration and absorption in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide a sustained action over a longer period. For example, a time delay material such as glyceryl monostearate or glyceryl distearate may be employed. They may also be coated by the techniques described in the U.S. Patents 4,256,108; 4,166,452; and 4,265,874 to form

osmotic therapeutic tablets for control release. Oral tablets may also be formulated for immediate release, such as fast melt tablets or wafers, rapid dissolve tablets or fast dissolve films.

Formulations for oral use may also be presented as hard gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with an inert solid diluent, for example, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate or kaolin, or as soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with water or an oil medium, for example peanut oil, liquid paraffin, or olive oil.

Aqueous suspensions contain the active materials in admixture with excipients suitable for the manufacture of aqueous suspensions. Such excipients are suspending agents, for example sodium carboxymethylcellulose, methylcellulose, hydroxy-propylmethylcellulose, sodium alginate, polyvinyl-pyrrolidone, gum tragacanth and gum acacia; dispersing or wetting agents may be a naturally-occurring phosphatide, for example lecithin, or condensation products of an alkylene oxide with fatty acids, for example polyoxyethylene stearate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with long chain aliphatic alcohols, for example heptadecaethyleneoxycetanol, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and a hexitol such as polyoxyethylene sorbitol monooleate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol anhydrides, for example polyethylene sorbitan monooleate. The aqueous suspensions may also contain one or more preservatives, for example ethyl, or n-propyl, p-hydroxybenzoate, one or more coloring agents, one or more flavoring agents, and one or more sweetening agents, such as sucrose or saccharin.

Oily suspensions may be formulated by suspending the active ingredient in a vegetable oil, for example arachis oil, olive oil, sesame oil or coconut oil, or in a mineral oil such as liquid paraffin. The oily suspensions may contain a thickening agent, for example beeswax, hard paraffin or cetyl alcohol. Sweetening agents such as those set forth above, and flavoring agents may be added to provide a palatable oral preparation. These compositions may be preserved by the addition of an anti-oxidant such as ascorbic acid.

Dispersible powders and granules suitable for preparation of an aqueous suspension by the addition of water provide the active ingredient in admixture with a dispersing or wetting agent, suspending agent and one or more preservatives. Suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents are exemplified by those already mentioned above. Additional excipients, for example sweetening, flavoring and coloring agents, may also be present.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention may also be in the form of oil-in-water emulsions. The oily phase may be a vegetable oil, for example olive oil or arachis oil,

or a mineral oil, for example liquid paraffin or mixtures of these. Suitable emulsifying agents may be naturally- occurring gums, for example gum acacia or gum tragacanth, naturally- occurring phosphatides, for example soy bean, lecithin, and esters or partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol anhydrides, for example sorbitan monooleate, and condensation products of the said partial esters with ethylene oxide, for example polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate. The emulsions may also contain sweetening and flavoring agents.

Syrups and elixirs may be formulated with sweetening agents, for example glycerol, propylene glycol, sorbitol or sucrose. Such formulations may also contain a demulcent, a preservative and flavoring and coloring agents.

The pharmaceutical compositions may be in the form of a sterile injectable aqueous or oleagenous suspension. This suspension may be formulated according to the known art using those suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents which have been mentioned above. The sterile injectable preparation may also be a sterile injectable solution or suspension in a non-toxic parenterally-acceptable diluent or solvent, for example as a solution in 1,3-butane diol. Among the acceptable vehicles and solvents that may be employed are water, Ringer's solution and isotonic sodium chloride solution. In addition, sterile, fixed oils are conventionally employed as a solvent or suspending medium. For this purpose any bland fixed oil may be employed including synthetic mono- or diglycerides. In addition, fatty acids such as oleic acid find use in the preparation of injectables.

The compounds of the present invention may also be administered in the form of suppositories for rectal administration of the drug. These compositions can be prepared by mixing the drug with a suitable non-irritating excipient which is solid at ordinary temperatures but liquid at the rectal temperature and will therefore melt in the rectum to release the drug. Such materials are cocoa butter and polyethylene glycols.

For topical use, creams, ointments, jellies, solutions or suspensions, etc., containing the compounds of the present invention are employed. Similarly, transdermal patches may also be used for topical administration.

The pharmaceutical composition and method of the present invention may further comprise other therapeutically active compounds as noted herein which are usually applied in the treatment of the above mentioned pathological conditions.

In the treatment, prevention, control, amelioration, or reduction of risk of conditions which require antagonism of CGRP receptor activity an appropriate dosage level will generally be about 0.01 to 500 mg per kg patient body weight per day which can be administered in single or multiple doses. A suitable dosage level may be about 0.01 to 250 mg/kg per day,

about 0.05 to 100 mg/kg per day, or about 0.1 to 50 mg/kg per day. Within this range the dosage may be 0.05 to 0.5, 0.5 to 5 or 5 to 50 mg/kg per day. For oral administration, the compositions may be provided in the form of tablets containing 1.0 to 1000 milligrams of the active ingredient, particularly 1.0, 5.0, 10.0, 15.0, 20.0, 25.0, 50.0, 75.0, 100.0, 150.0, 200.0, 250.0, 300.0, 400.0, 500.0, 600.0, 750.0, 800.0, 900.0, and 1000.0 milligrams of the active ingredient for the symptomatic adjustment of the dosage to the patient to be treated. The compounds may be administered on a regimen of 1 to 4 times per day, or may be administered once or twice per day.

When treating, preventing, controlling, ameliorating, or reducing the risk of headache, migraine, cluster headache, or other diseases for which compounds of the present invention are indicated, generally satisfactory results are obtained when the compounds of the present invention are administered at a daily dosage of from about 0.1 milligram to about 100 milligram per kilogram of animal body weight, given as a single daily dose or in divided doses two to six times a day, or in sustained release form. For most large mammals, the total daily dosage is from about 1.0 milligrams to about 1000 milligrams, or from about 1 milligram to about 50 milligrams. In the case of a 70 kg adult human, the total daily dose will generally be from about 7 milligrams to about 350 milligrams. This dosage regimen may be adjusted to provide the optimal therapeutic response.

It will be understood, however, that the specific dose level and frequency of dosage for any particular patient may be varied and will depend upon a variety of factors including the activity of the specific compound employed, the metabolic stability and length of action of that compound, the age, body weight, general health, sex, diet, mode and time of administration, rate of excretion, drug combination, the severity of the particular condition, and the host undergoing therapy.

Several methods for preparing the compounds of this invention are illustrated in the following Schemes and Examples. Starting materials are made according to procedures known in the art or as illustrated herein.

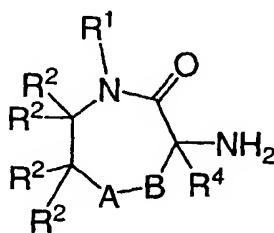
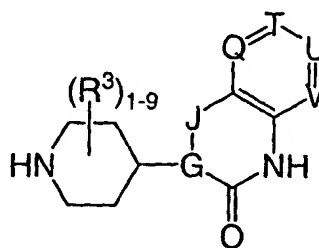
The compounds of the present invention can be prepared readily according to the following Schemes and specific examples, or modifications thereof, using readily available starting materials, reagents and conventional synthesis procedures. In these reactions, it is also possible to make use of variants which are themselves known to those of ordinary skill in this art but are not mentioned in greater detail. The general procedures for making the compounds claimed in this invention can be readily understood and appreciated by one skilled in the art from viewing the following Schemes.

The synthesis of intermediates and final compounds may be conducted as described in Schemes 1-16.

REACTION SCHEMES

5

The preparation of final compounds proceeds through intermediates such as those of Formula **III** and Formula **IV**, and representative syntheses are described herein.

**III****IV**

10

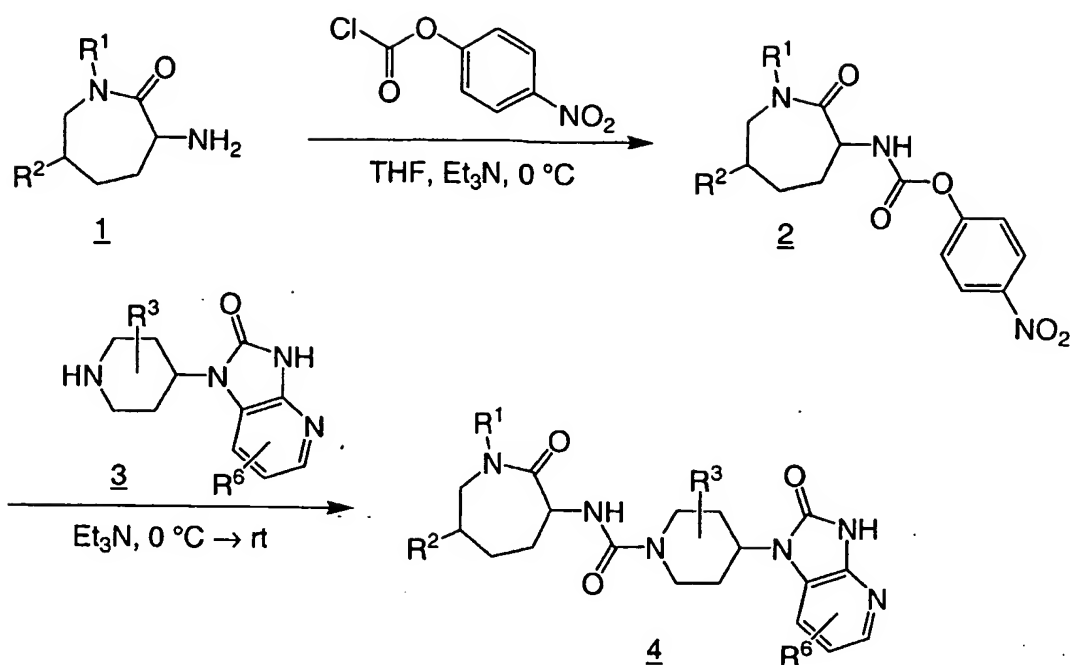
In general, intermediates of the Formulae **III** and **IV** can be coupled through a urea linkage as shown in Scheme 1. Amine intermediate 1 can be converted to a reactive carbamate, for example p-nitrophenylcarbamate 2, which is subsequently reacted with an amine like that of intermediate 3 to produce urea 4. Other activated intermediates known to those skilled in the art can be used to prepare compounds like 4. For example, amine 1 can be directly acylated with the appropriate carbamoyl chloride.

15

20

25

SCHEME 1



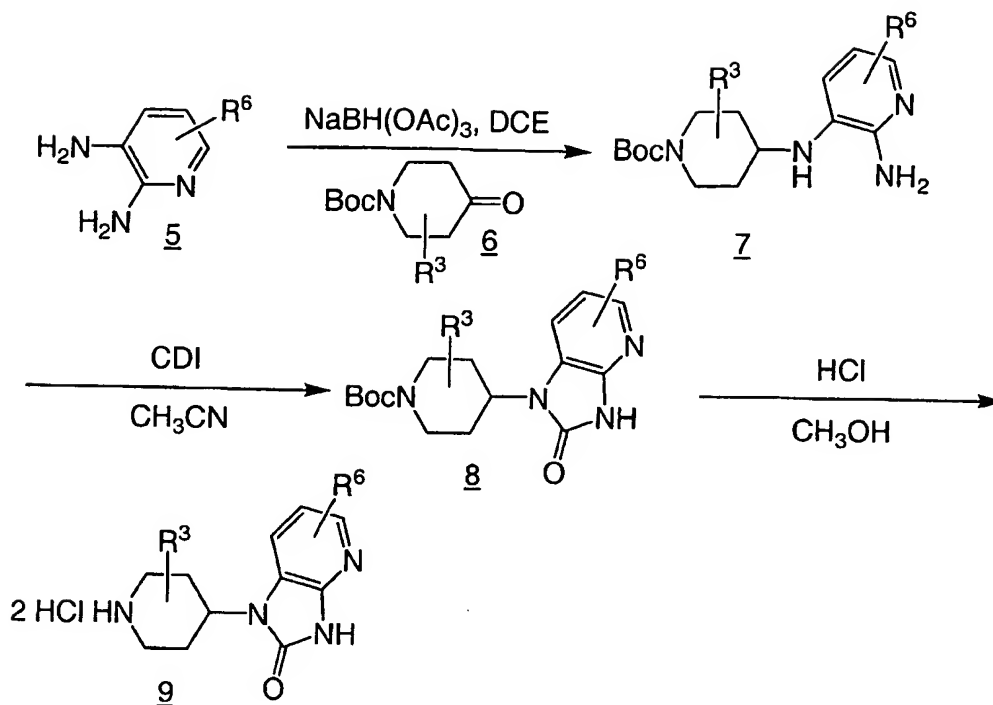
5 The synthesis of compounds represented by Intermediate **IV** can be accomplished by procedures similar to those described in Henning et al., J. Med. Chem., 1987, 30, 814-819; Carpino et al., WO 96/35713; Brown et al., J. Chem. Soc. 1957, 682-686; Barlin et al., Aust. J. Chem. 1982, 35 (11), 2299-2306; and references cited therein.

10 Additionally, the synthesis of compounds represented by Intermediate **IV** can be accomplished according to Schemes 2-6. For example, a diamino heterocycle, such as 2,3-diaminopyridine **5**, can be reductively alkylated with ketones such as **6** to give the monalkylated product **7** (Scheme 2). Ring closure with carbonyldiimidazole furnishes imidazolone **8**. Final deprotection under standard conditions gives the intermediate **9**.

15

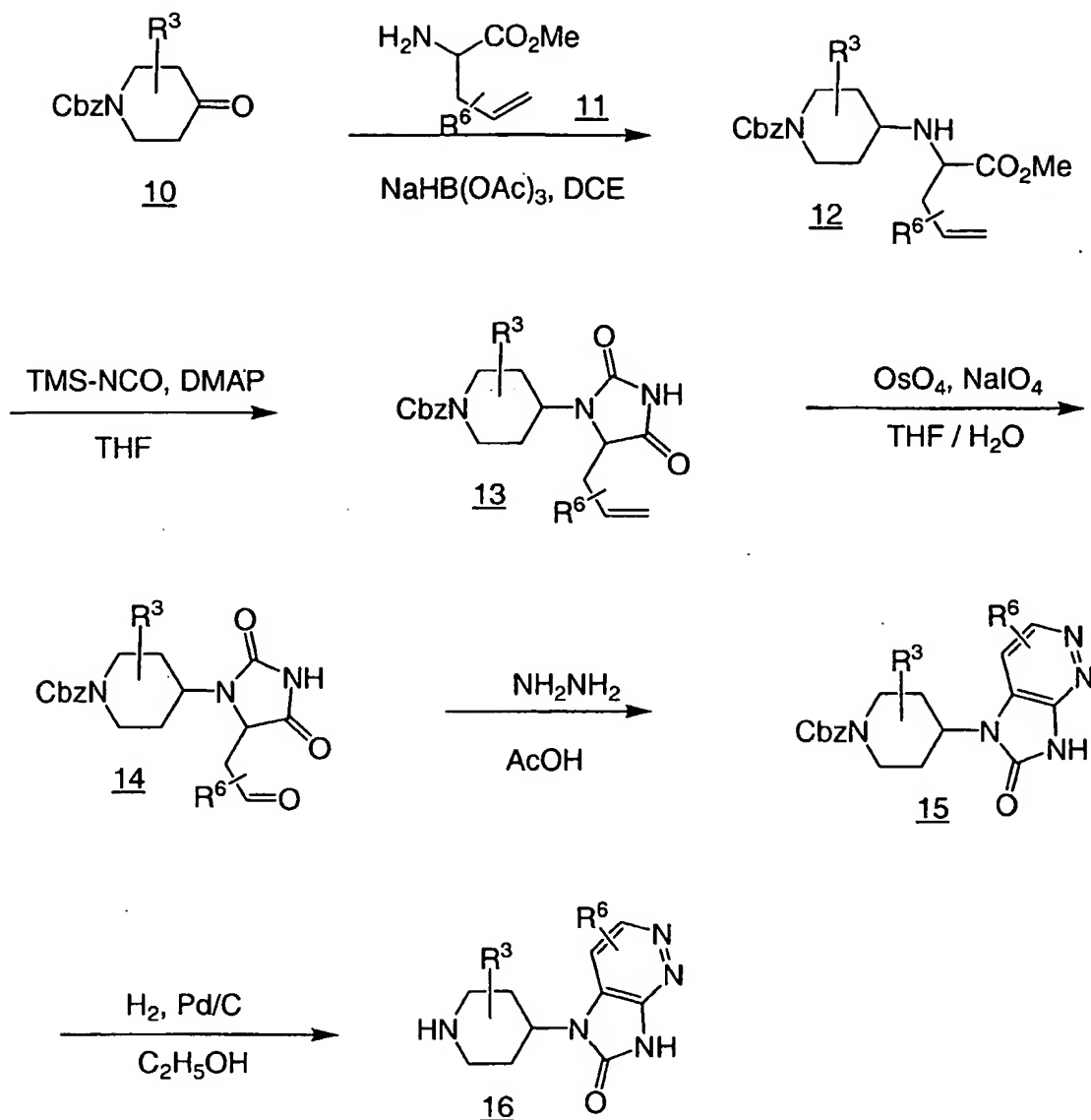
20

SCHEME 2



- 5 Alternatively, as described in Scheme 3, a suitably protected 4-ketopiperidine like **10** can be reductively alkylated with the appropriate α -amino ester, for example by allylglycine methyl ester (**11**, $R^6=\text{H}$), which then would furnish **12**. Treatment with trimethylsilyl isocyanate yields hydantoin **13**. Oxidative cleavage of the terminal double bond can be accomplished under standard conditions to afford aldehyde **14**, which can be cyclized in the presence of hydrazine in
- 10 warm acetic acid to deliver **15**. Removal of the protecting group gives compounds like **16**.

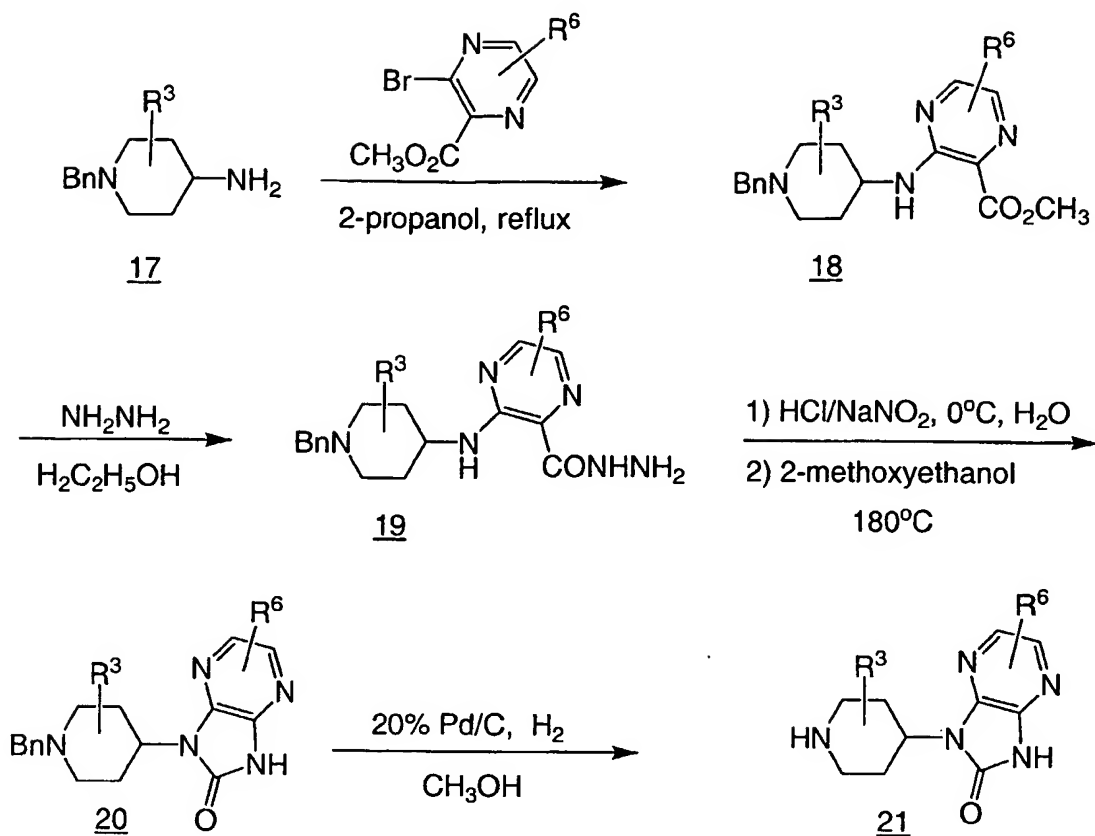
SCHEME 3



5 In Scheme 4, a suitably protected 4-aminopiperidine **17** can be arylated by a $\text{S}_{\text{N}}\text{Ar}$ reaction, for example using methyl 2-bromopyrazine-3-carboxylate. The resulting product **18** can be converted to an acyl azide via acyl hydrazide **19**. Thermal rearrangement of the acyl azide (Curtius rearrangement) can occur with concomitant ring closure to produce **20**. Final deprotection under standard conditions gives the desired heterocycles **21**.

10

SCHEME 4

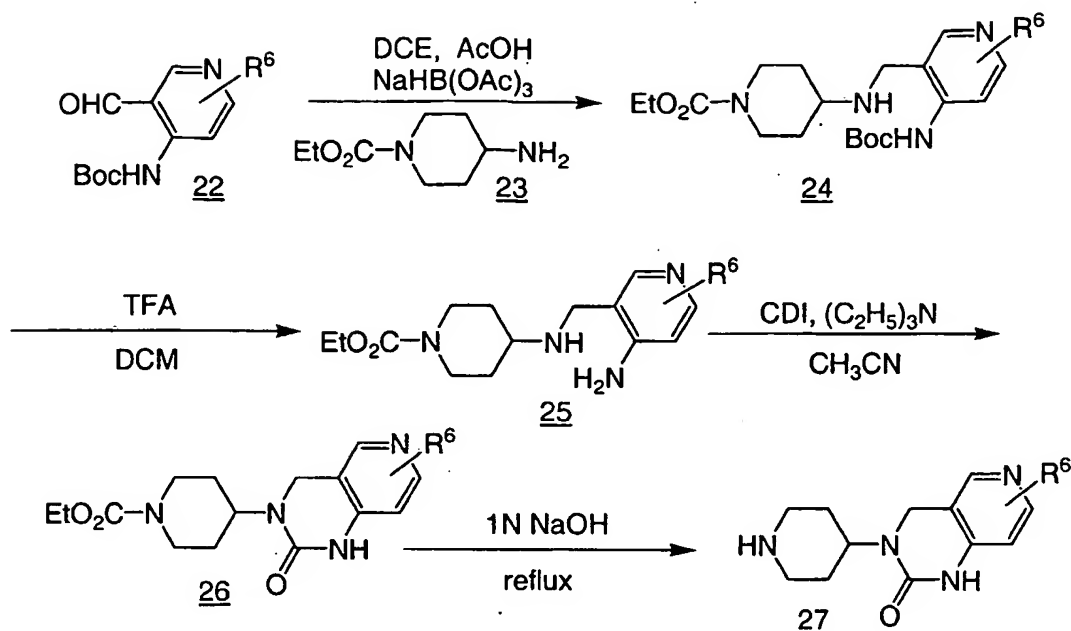


5

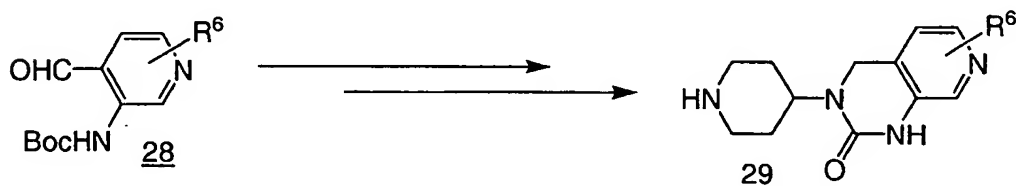
Additional heterocycles can be synthesized in a similar manner. For example, a heterocycle carboxaldehyde, such as 22 (*J. Med. Chem.* **1998**, *31*, 2136-45) in Scheme 5, can be reductively aminated with amines such as 23 to give the monoalkylated product 24.

- 10 Deprotection with acid and ring closure with carbonyldiimidazole furnishes pyridodihydropyrimidinone 26. Final deprotection under standard basic conditions gives the product 27.

SCHEME 5



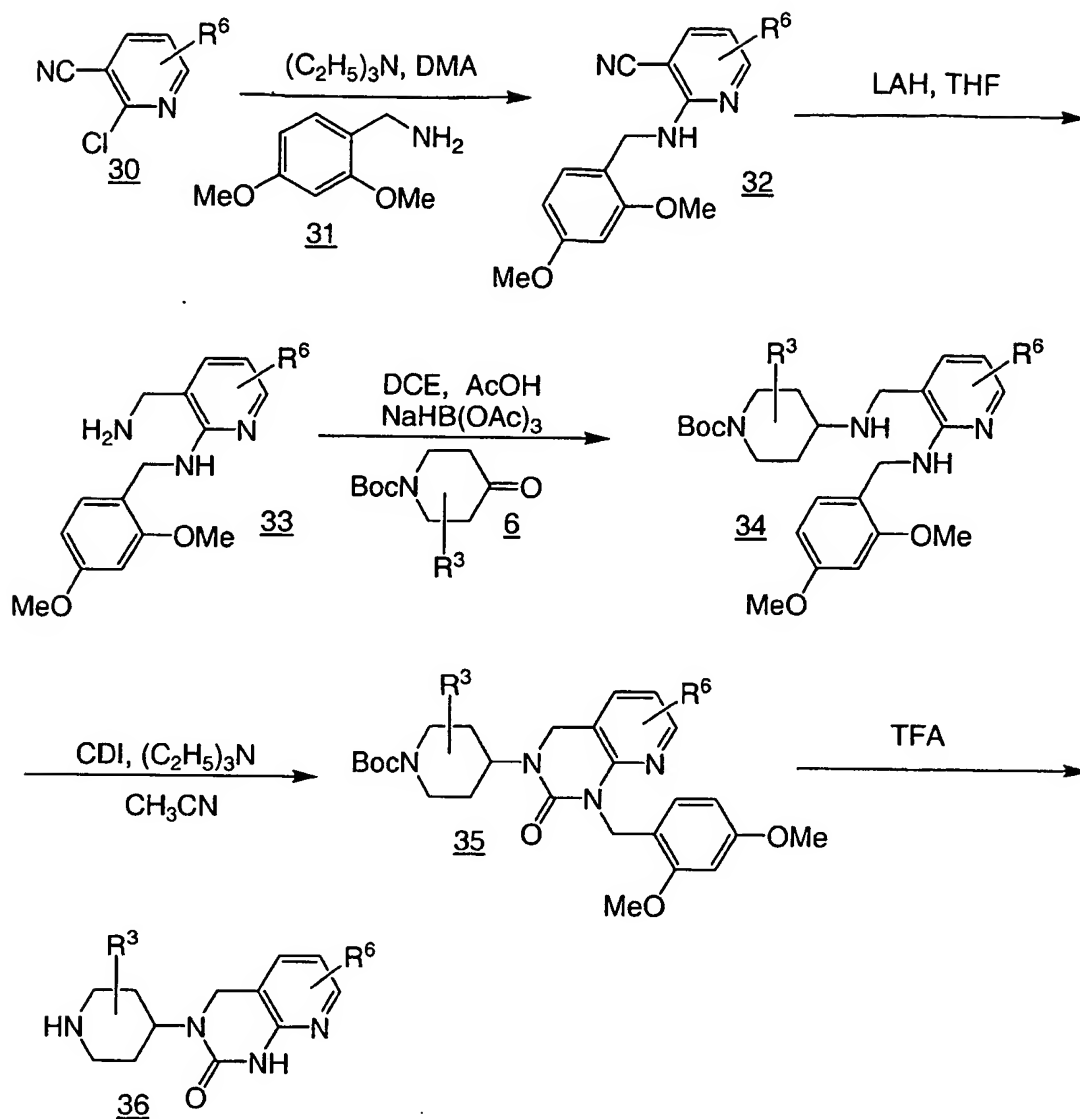
5 A similar synthetic strategy can be used to construct the related pyridodihydropyrimidinone of formula **29** starting from the commercially available aldehyde **28**.



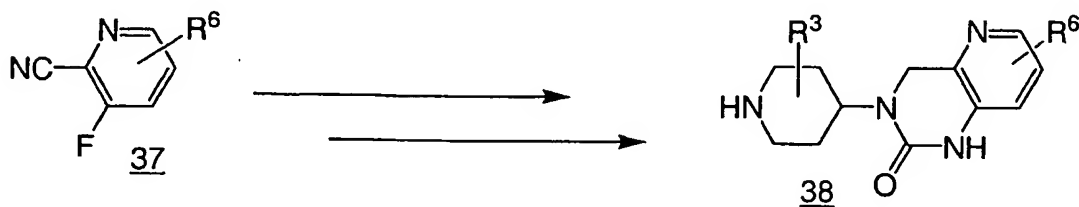
10 Alternatively, addition of a suitably protected amine, such as **31**, to the commercially available chloropyridine **30**, followed by nitrile reduction affords the diamine **33** (Scheme 6). This diamino heterocycle can be reductively alkylated with ketones such as **6** to give the monoalkylated product **34**. Ring closure with carbonyldiimidazole furnishes pyridodihydropyrimidinone **35**. Final deprotection with trifluoroacetic acid gives the product **36**.

15

SCHEME 6



A similar synthetic strategy can be used to construct the related pyridodihydropyrimidinone of formula 38 starting from the known nitrile 37.



Caprolactams can be assembled following an olefin metathesis strategy as outlined in Scheme 7. 2,4-Dimethoxybenzylamine hydrochloride is alkylated with 2,3-dibromopropene under mild basic conditions to give amine 39. (2*R*)-2-

{[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}pent-4-enoic acid 40, prepared in one step from commercially

5 available D-allyl glycine according to known procedures (J. Chem. Soc., 1962, 3963-3968), can

be coupled to amine 30 under a variety of conditions to give amide 41. A variety of transition metal catalyzed cross couplings can be performed on the vinyl bromide, for example palladium-mediated arylations with phenylboronic acid and sodium carbonate, yielding styrene derivative

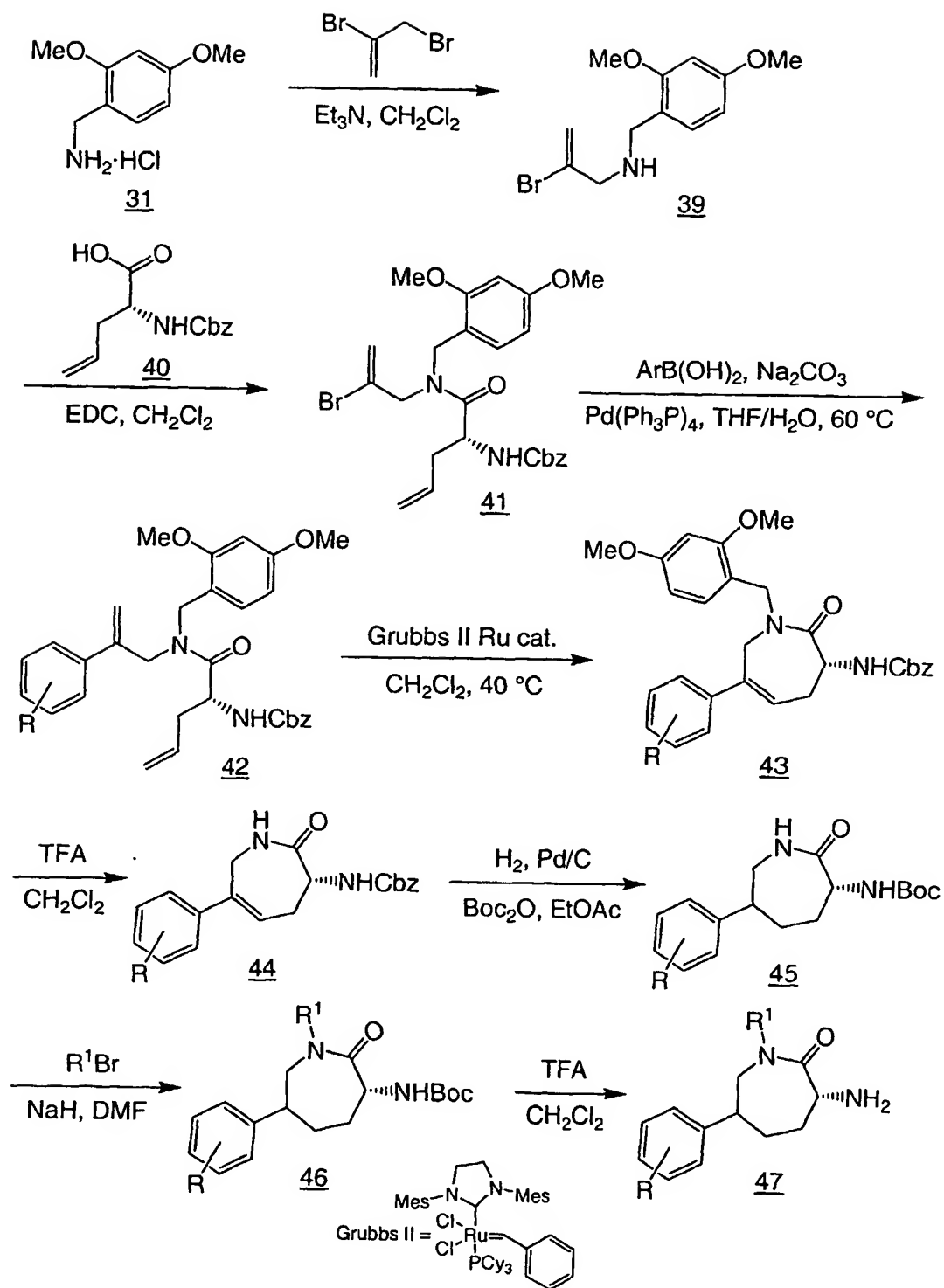
42. Ring-closing metathesis occurs in the presence of the Grubbs second generation ruthenium

10 catalyst in dichloromethane with mild heating to afford lactam 43. Removal of the

dimethoxybenzyl group and hydrogenation with *in situ* protection of the primary amine gives the corresponding saturated lactam 45. After selective alkylation of the amide nitrogen with various electrophiles such as alkyl bromides, deprotection under acidic conditions yields compounds of the general formula 47.

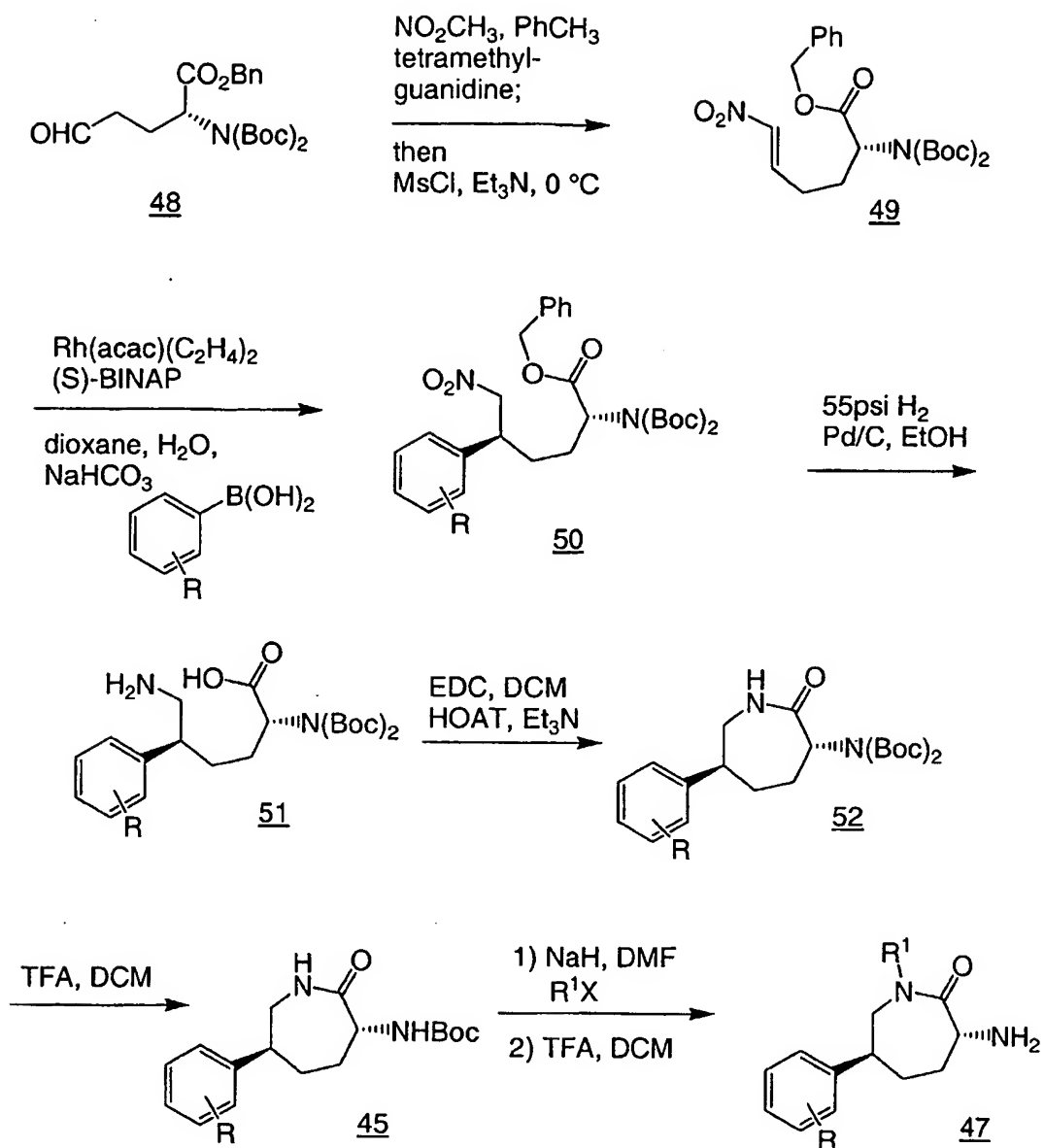
15

SCHEME 7



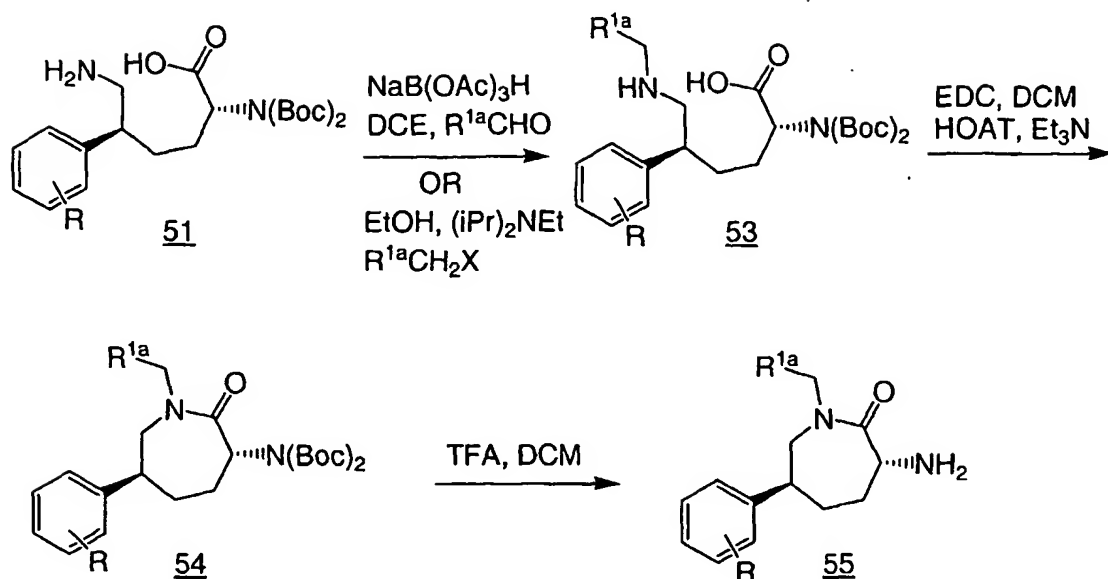
Alternatively, a C6-aryl group can be introduced as outlined in Scheme 8. Addition of nitromethane to the known glutamic acid derived aldehyde 48 (*Tetrahedron Asymmetry*, 1998, 3381-94), followed by *in situ* elimination affords nitro olefin 49. Addition of the aryl group via a boronic acid derivative, or similar equivalent, can be accomplished in a stereoselective manner through chiral ligand-Rh catalysis. Concomitant nitro reduction and benzyl ester hydrogenolysis affords the amino acid 51. Ring closure under standard conditions, followed by removal of a single tert-butoxycarbonyl group furnishes the lactam 45. Intermediates such as 51 can be further processed as in Scheme 9.

SCHEME 8



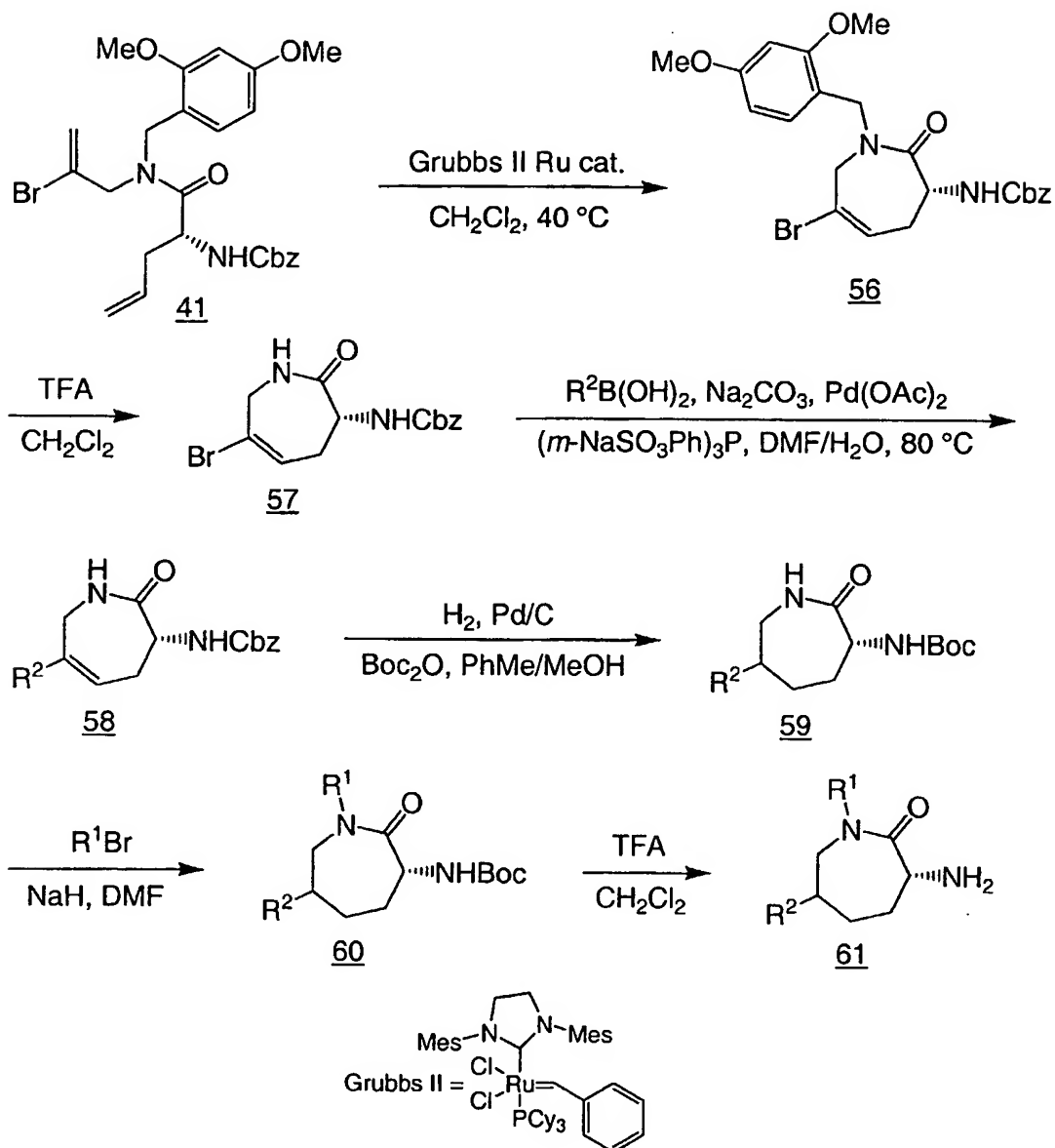
- 5 Alternatively, amino acid **51** can be alkylated, either reductively or via an $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$ displacement, to afford intermediates such as **53** (Scheme 9). Ring closure under standard conditions, followed by protecting group removal furnishes the lactam **55**.

SCHEME 9



- 5 Variation at the 6-position of the caprolactams can be introduced by employing a similar strategy (Scheme 10). Ring-closing metathesis can be performed directly on vinyl bromide **41** using the Grubbs second generation ruthenium catalyst to give cyclic vinyl bromide **56**. Removal of the dimethoxybenzyl group and palladium-mediated cross coupling, in this case with a boronic acid, furnishes compounds of the general formula **58**. The transformation of **57** to **58** is not limited to
- 10 boronic acid derivatives. After standard hydrogenation, the amide nitrogen can be selectively alkylated with various electrophiles, for example alkyl bromides, using sodium hydride as base. Deprotection yields lactams of the general formula **61**.

SCHEME 10

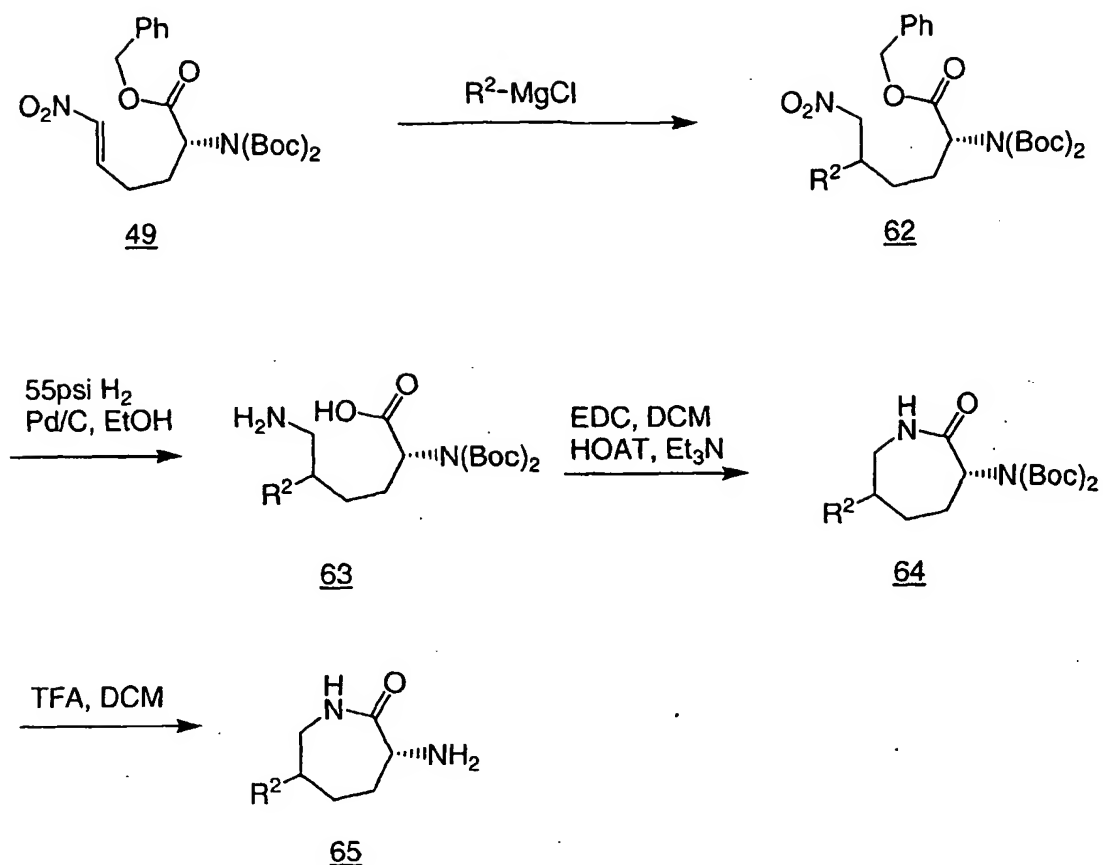


5

Alternatively, addition of a Grignard or similar reagent, to the nitro olefin 49, followed by nitro reduction and benzyl ester hydrogenolysis affords various amino acids such as 63 (Scheme 11). Ring closure with EDC furnishes caprolactam 64. Final deprotection with trifluoroacetic acid gives the product 65.

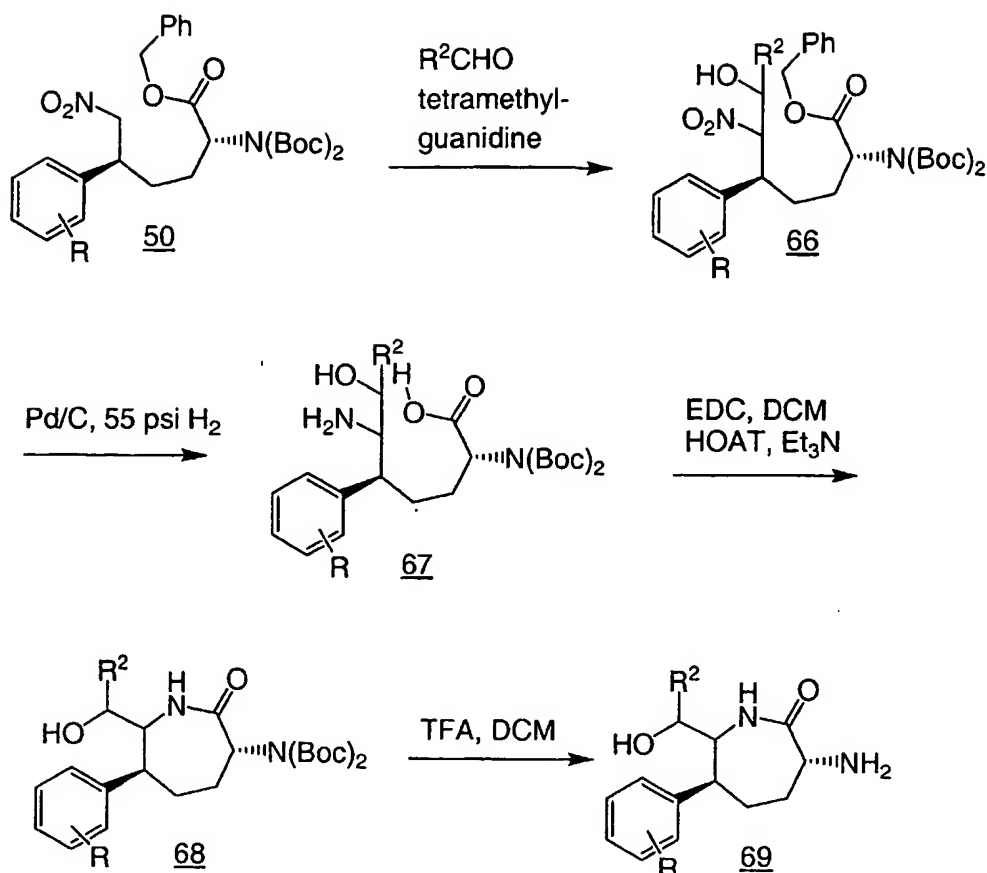
10

SCHEME 11



- 5 The C7-position of the caprolactam can be varied as outlined in Scheme 12. Addition of the nitroalkane to an aldehyde R^2CHO , affords an alcohol such as 66. Concomitant nitro reduction and benzyl ester hydrogenolysis affords the amino acid 67. Ring closure under standard conditions, followed by removal of the tert-butoxycarbonyl groups furnishes the lactam 69.

SCHEME 12

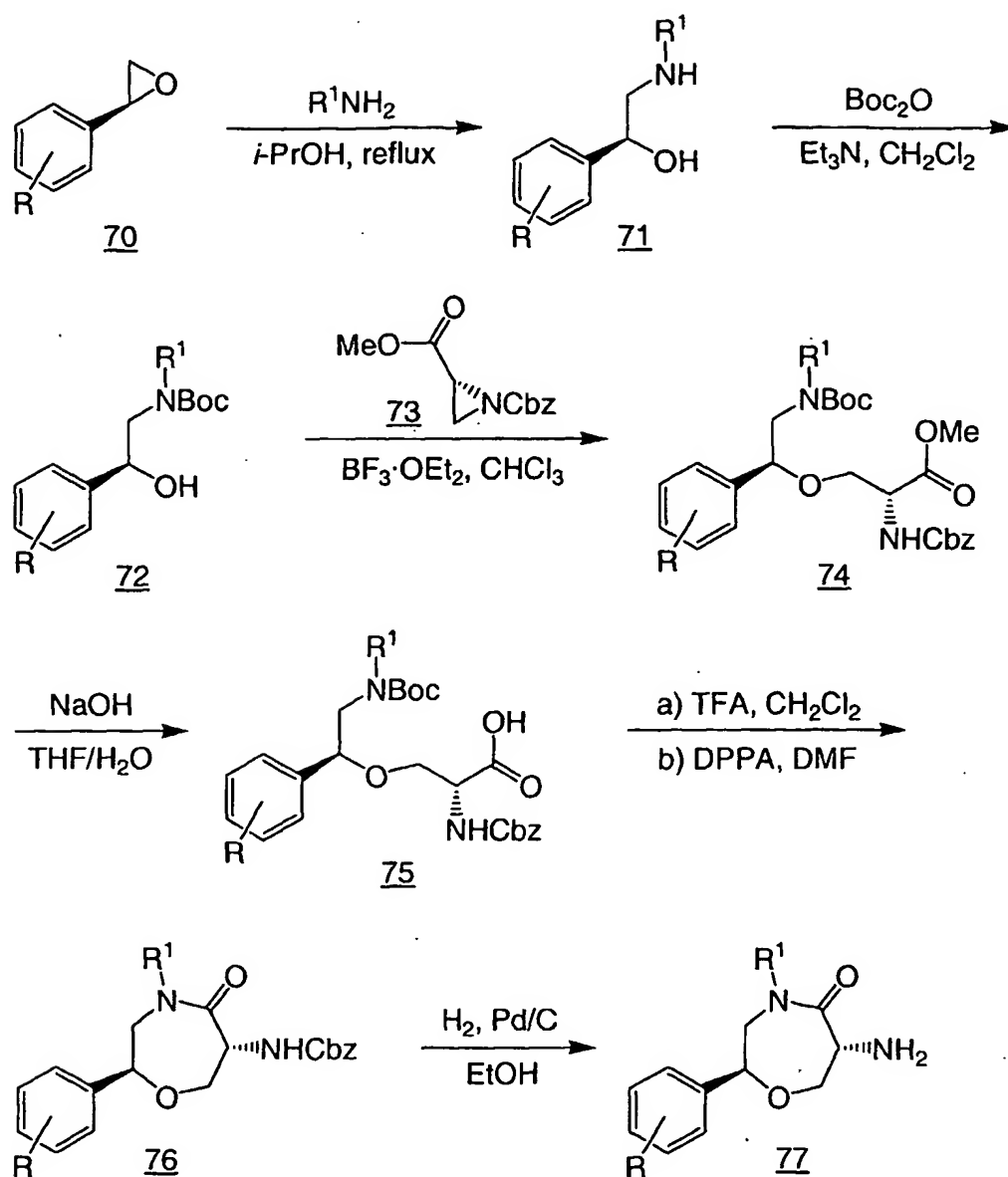


5

The oxazepanones can be prepared according to Scheme 13. (*S*)-(-)-Styrene oxide (or substituted derivatives) 70 can be opened by reaction with various primary amines in isopropanol solvent to afford the corresponding amino alcohols 71. Selective *N*-protection followed by boron trifluoride etherate catalyzed aziridine opening of 73 (prepared according to known procedures: J. Chem. Soc., Perkins Trans. 1, 1994, 7, 807-816) provides ether 74. Hydrolysis of the methyl ester, selective amine deprotection, and amide bond formation with diphenylphosphoryl azide gives 76, which after standard hydrogenation conditions yields amine 77.

15

SCHEME 13

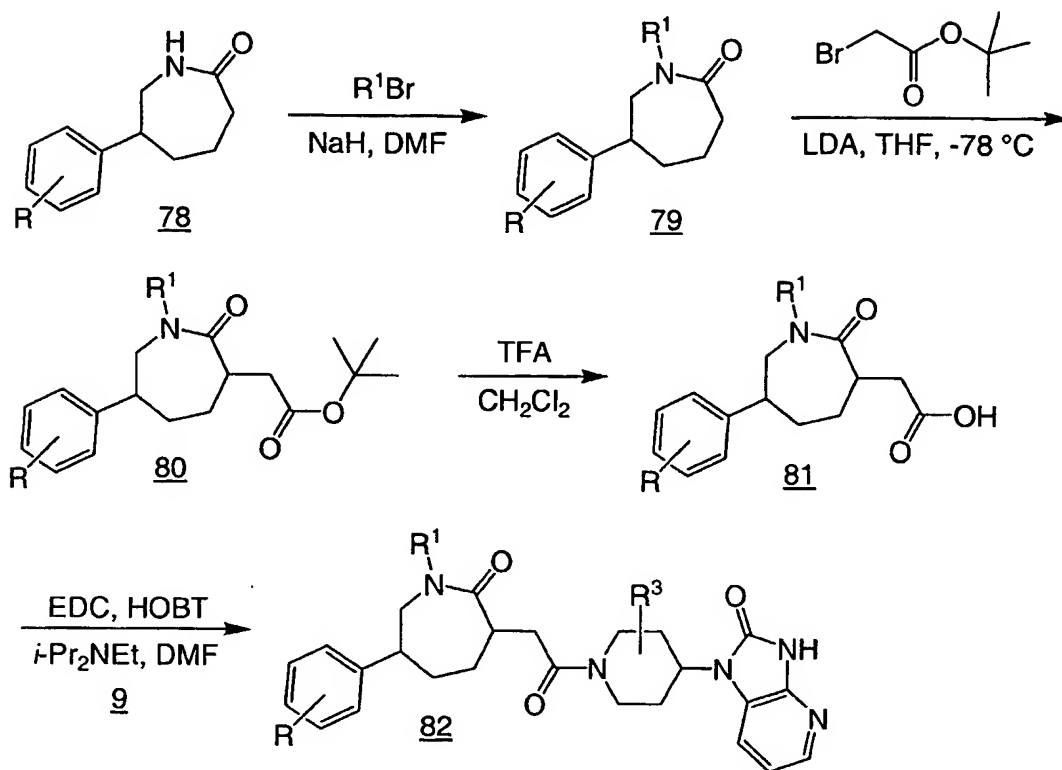


- 5 The 3-acetyl caprolactam derivatives can be prepared as outlined in Scheme 14.
- Lactam **78** (prepared according to known procedures: J. Med. Chem., 1988, 31, 422-428) can be alkylated selectively at the amide nitrogen with a variety of electrophiles, such as alkyl bromides, using sodium hydride as base. C-alkylation is achieved by generation of the enolate with lithium diisopropylamide followed by quenching with *tert*-butyl bromoacetate, giving ester **79**.
- 10 Deprotection of the carboxyl group is accomplished with trifluoroacetic acid. Coupling of the

resultant carboxylic acid with amine 9 under standard conditions affords 3-acetyl lactams of the general formula 82.

SCHEME 14

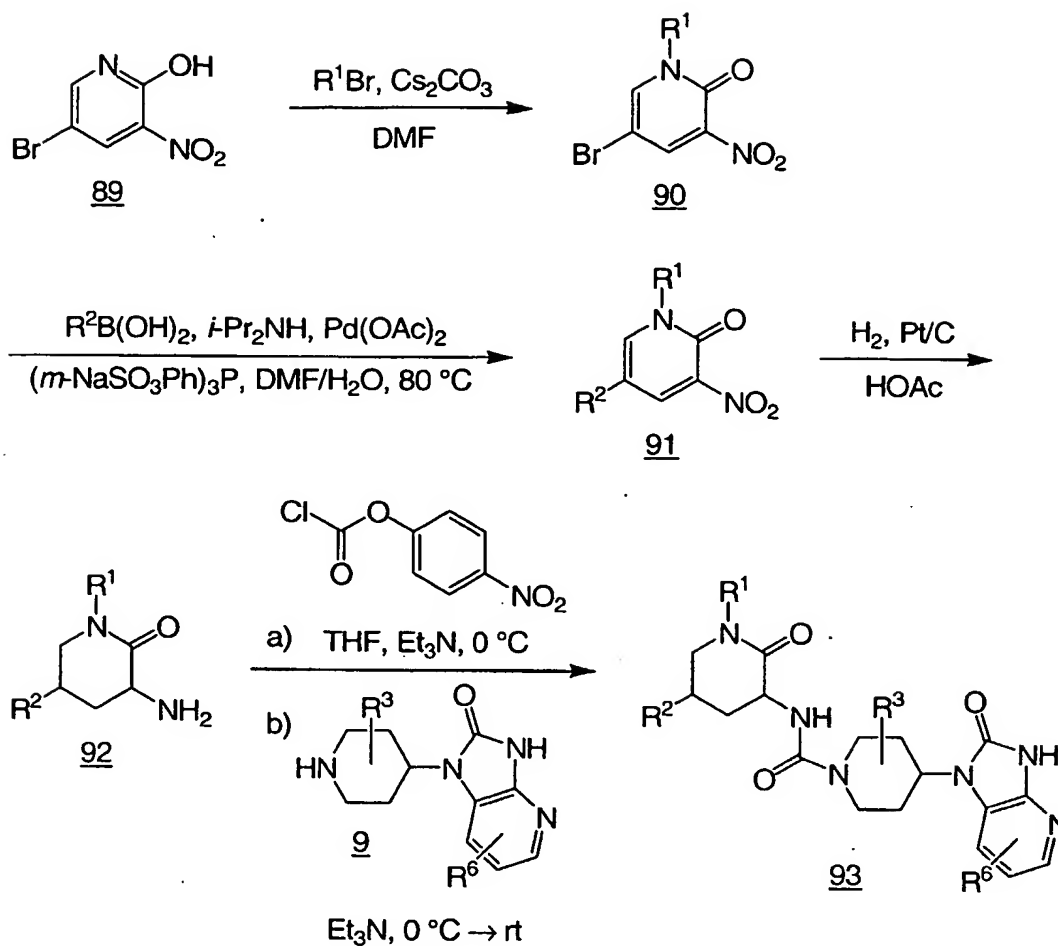
5



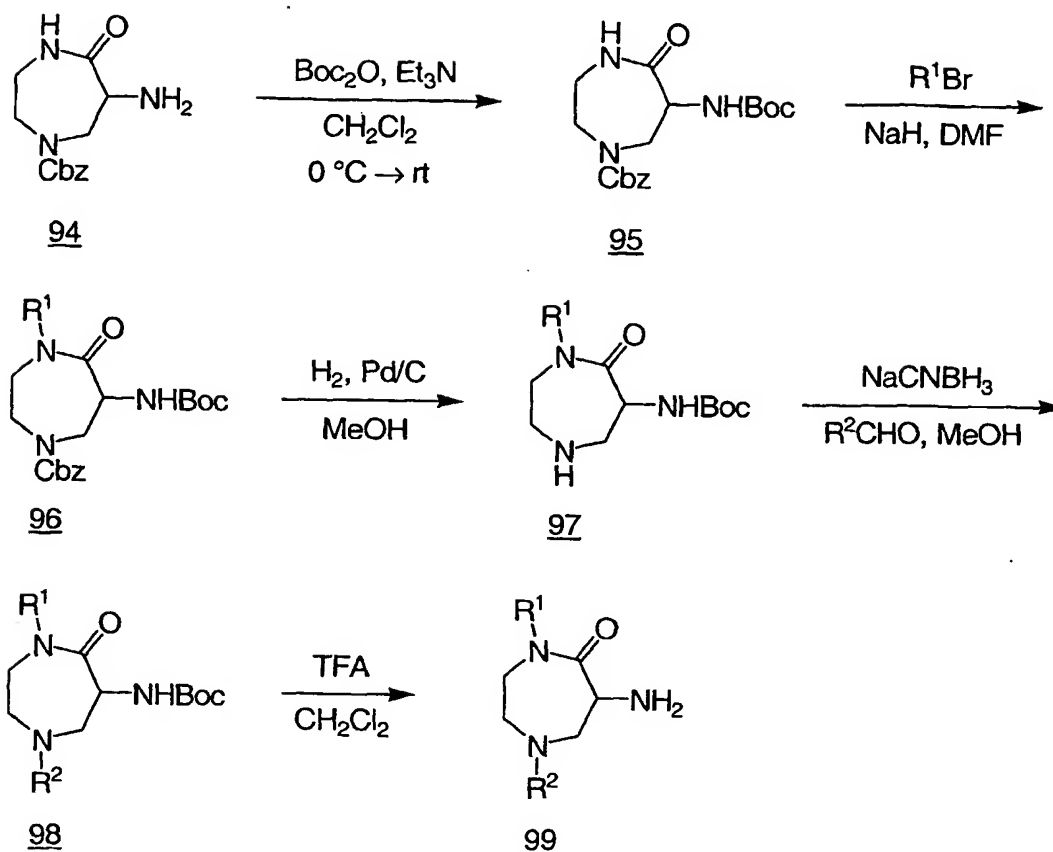
10 Piperidinones are prepared as outlined in Scheme 15. Commercially available hydroxypyridine 89 can be selectively *N*-alkylated using various electrophiles with cesium carbonate. Palladium-mediated cross coupling with different aryl, heteroaryl, and alkyl groups affords the substituted pyridinones. Platinum catalyzed hydrogenation at 56 psi results in both reduction of the olefins and the nitro group, giving diastereomeric mixtures of the primary amine 92. Urea formation under standard conditions with the appropriate amine (eg, 9) yields the final targets 93.

15

SCHEME 15



- 5 Diazepinone derivatives can be prepared as shown in Scheme 16. Following amine protection of the commercially available diazepinone **94**, alkylation of various electrophiles with sodium hydride gives substituted amides **96**. Removal of the Cbz group and reductive amination of various aldehydes or alkylation of different halides affords the disubstituted diazepinones, such as **98**, and final deprotection of the primary amine with
- 10 trifluoroacetic acid yields the urea coupling precursor **99**.

SCHEME 16

5

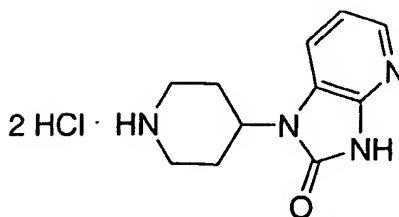
In some cases the final product may be further modified, for example, by manipulation of substituents. These manipulations may include, but are not limited to, reduction, oxidation, alkylation, acylation, and hydrolysis reactions which are commonly known to those skilled in the art. Moreover, in some cases the order of carrying out the foregoing reaction schemes may be varied to facilitate the reaction or to avoid unwanted reaction products.

10

INTERMEDIATES AND EXAMPLES

15

The following examples are provided so that the invention might be more fully understood. These examples are illustrative only and should not be construed as limiting the invention in any way.

INTERMEDIATE 12-Oxo-1-(4-piperidiny)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride5 Step A. 2-Amino-3-[(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]pyridine

Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (14.5 g, 68.7 mmol) was added to a solution of 2,3-diaminopyridine (5.00 g, 45.8 mmol) and N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-4-piperidone (9.58 g, 48.1 mmol) in dichloroethane (75 mL) at room temperature. After 5 h, additional sodium triacetoxyborohydride was added (1.8 g) and again after another 2.5 h. The reaction was stirred
 10 overnight, and quenched with 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide. This was extracted with methylene chloride, and washed with 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide, water and saturated sodium chloride solution. After drying over sodium sulfate, the solution was filtered and evaporated to give the crude product. This was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 3 to 5% methanol in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (4.44 g). MS 293 (M+1)
 15 ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 7.32 (dd, J=1, 5 Hz, 1H), 6.85 (dd, J=1, 8 Hz, 1H), 6.59 (dd, J=5, 8 Hz, 1H), 4.04 (d, J=13 Hz, 2H), 3.46 (m, 1H), 2.98 (br s, 2H), 2.01 (dd, J=2, 12 Hz, 2H), 1.46 (s, 9H), 1.37 (qd, J=4, 12 Hz, 2H).

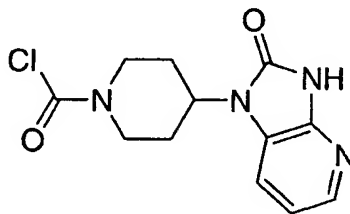
Step B. 2-Oxo-1-(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine

20 Carbonyldiimidazole (0.70 g, 4.33 mmol) was added to a solution of 2-amino-3-[(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]pyridine (1.15 g, 3.93 mmol) in acetonitrile (150 mL) at room temperature. After several hours, an additional amount of carbonyldiimidazole was added (0.81 g), and the reaction stirred overnight. The acetonitrile was evaporated in vacuo, the residue partitioned between water and chloroform, and the organic phase washed with saturated
 25 brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. The crude product was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 1.2 to 2.5% methanol in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (1.09 g). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.39 (br s, 1H), 8.04 (dd, J=1, 5 Hz, 1H), 7.33 (dd, J=1, 8 Hz, 1H), 6.99 (dd, J=5, 8 Hz, 1H), 4.50 (m, 1H), 4.32 (br s, 2H), 2.86 (br s, 2H), 2.20 (m, 2H), 1.86 (d, J=12 Hz, 2H), 1.50 (s, 9H).

Step C. 2-Oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride

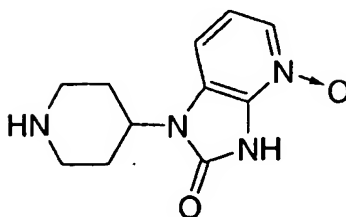
2-Oxo-1-(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (1.03 g, 3.23 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (25 mL) and a solution of 2N hydrochloric acid in ether (8 mL) was added at room temperature. After 2 h, the volatiles were removed in vacuo, to give the title compound (0.92 g). MS 219 (M + 1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.01 (dd, J=1, 6 Hz, 1H), 7.83 (d, J=8 Hz, 1H), 7.28 (dd, J=6, 8 Hz, 1H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 3.59 (d, J=12 Hz, 2H), 3.21 (t, J=12 Hz, 2H), 2.70 (dq, J=4, 13 Hz, 2H), 2.12 (d, J=13 Hz, 2H).

INTERMEDIATE 1A



4-(2-Oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carbonyl chloride

Phosgene (20% wt. in toluene; 1.8 mL, 3.43 mmol) was added to a suspension of 2-oxo-1-piperidinium-4-yl-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-4-ium dichloride (100 mg, 0.343 mmol) and 2,6-lutidine (0.50 mL, 4.293 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 h, the solution was added to saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water (2x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Dichloromethane (10 mL) was added, and the mixture was filtered to give the title compound as a solid (48 mg). MS 281 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, (CD₃)₂SO) δ 11.58 (s, 1H), 7.90 (d, J = 5.1 Hz, 1H), 7.67 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.01-6.99 (m, 1H), 4.52-4.46 (m, 1H), 4.31-4.23 (m, 2H), 3.38-3.33 (m, 1H), 3.19-3.14 (m, 1H), 2.32-2.24 (m, 2H), 1.84-1.81 (m, 2H).

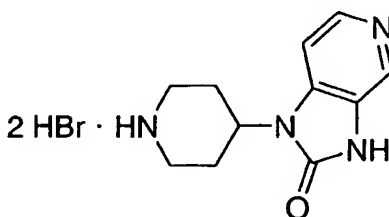
INTERMEDIATE 21-Piperidin-4-yl-1,3-dihydro-2H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-one 4-oxide

Step A. *tert*-Butyl 4-(4-oxido-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate

5 2-Oxo-1-(1-*t*-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (63 mg, 0.198 mmol) was dissolved in 1,2-dichloroethane (10 mL) and 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (137 mg, 0.792 mmol) was added at 0 °C. The reaction was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 4 h. The reaction was quenched with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and sodium thiosulfate, extracted with methylene chloride (3x), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to give the title compound (45 mg). MS 335.1 (M + 1).

Step B. 1-Piperidin-4-yl-1,3-dihydro-2H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-one 4-oxide

15 *tert*-Butyl 4-(4-oxido-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate (45 mg, 0.135 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (10 mL) and trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL) was added at room temperature. After 3 h, the volatiles were removed in vacuo to give the title compound as its TFA salt. MS 235.2 (M + 1).

INTERMEDIATE 32-Oxo-3-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine dihydrobromide

Step A. Ethyl 4-(pyridin-4-ylamino)piperidine-1-carboxylate

A solution of ethyl 4-aminopiperidine-1-carboxylate (2.20 g, 12.7 mmol), 4-bromopyridine (3.47 g, 17.8 mmol), sodium *t*-butoxide (4.54 g, 47.2 mmol), 2,2'-

bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl (0.398 g, 0.639 mmol) and palladium acetate (0.143 g, 0.639 mmol) in toluene (40 mL) was heated at 60 °C overnight. The reaction was cooled and partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The aqueous layer was washed 3 times with methylene chloride, and the combined organic layers dried over sodium sulfate. The crude product was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 0 to 10% {5% ammonium hydroxide in methanol} in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (1.3 g, 41% yield).

Step B. Ethyl 4-[(3-nitropyridin-4-yl)amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate

A solution of ethyl 4-(pyridin-4-ylamino)piperidine-1-carboxylate (1.30 g, 5.21 mmol) in 90% sulfuric acid (17 mL) was cooled to 0 °C. To this was added 70% nitric acid (1.2 mL) in 90% sulfuric acid (8 mL). The reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 1.5 h, then poured into ice water (150 mL). Solid sodium carbonate was added to render the solution basic. This mixture was extracted four times with methylene chloride, dried, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 0 to 10% {5% ammonium hydroxide in methanol} in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (1.09 g, 71% yield).

Step C. Ethyl 4-[(3-aminopyridin-4-yl)amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate

Ethyl 4-[(3-nitropyridin-4-yl)amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate (1.09 g, 3.70 mmol) in ethanol was hydrogenated (1 atm hydrogen) over 30% palladium on carbon (300 mg) for 4 h. The reaction was filtered through celite and concentrated in vacuo, to give the title compound (0.98 g, 100%).

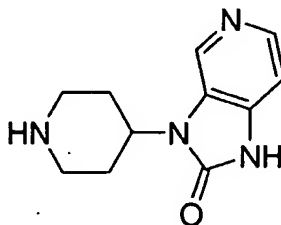
Step D. Ethyl 4-[(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazol[4,5-c]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate

A solution of ethyl 4-[(3-aminopyridin-4-yl)amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate (0.98 g, 3.70 mmol) and carbonyldiimidazole (1.80 g, 11.1 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (40 mL) was refluxed until starting material was consumed. The solvent was removed in vacuo and the crude product purified by chromatography (silica gel, 0 to 10% {5% ammonium hydroxide in methanol} in methylene chloride gradient elution). Fractions containing product were dissolved in methylene chloride and washed with saturated sodium carbonate to remove co-eluting imidazole. The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give the title compound (0.360 g, 33% yield).

Step E. 2-Oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazol[4,5-c]pyridine dihydrobromide

A solution of ethyl 4-[(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazol[4,5-c]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate (0.120 g, 0.413 mmol) in 30% hydrogen bromide/acetic acid (1 mL) was heated at 70 °C overnight. The reaction was cooled and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting solid was triturated with methylene chloride and dried, giving the title compound (0.123 g, 78% yield). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.48 (d, J=6 Hz, 1H), 8.46 (s, 1H), 7.94 (d, J=6 Hz, 1H), 4.80 (m, 1H), 3.60 (d, J=10 Hz, 2H), 3.30 (m, partially obscured by solvent peak), 2.81 (dq, J=4,12 Hz, 2H), 2.16 (d, J=12 Hz, 2H).

INTERMEDIATE 4



2-Oxo-3-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine

Step A. 4-Amino-3-[(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]pyridine

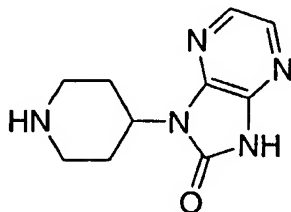
A mixture of 3,4-diaminopyridine (1.1 g, 10.1 mmol), 1-benzyl-4-piperidone (3.2 g, 16.9 mmol) sodium triacetoxyborohydride (4.0 g, 18.9 mmol), and acetic acid (10.7 mL) in dichloroethane (10 mL) was stirred for about 6 days at room temperature. The reaction was concentrated to near dryness, and partitioned between chloroform (5 x 50 mL) and 1N sodium hydroxide (50 mL). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give the title compound (2.8 g). MS 283 (M+1).

Step B. 2-Oxo-3-(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine

A solution of 4-amino-3-[(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]pyridine (2.8 g, 9.9 mmol) and carbonyldiimidazole (3.0 g, 18.5 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) was refluxed overnight. The reaction was cooled, concentrated and partitioned between chloroform (500 mL) and saturated sodium carbonate (100 mL). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give the title compound (2.8 g). MS 209 (M+1).

Step C. 2-Oxo-3-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine

A solution of 2-oxo-3-(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine (0.5 g, 1.6 mmol) in methanol (250 mL) was shaken with 20% Pd(OH)₂ under a hydrogen atmosphere for 48 h at room temperature. The reaction was filtered and concentrated to give the title compound as a white solid (0.3 g). MS 219 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 52-Oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyrazine10 Step A. Methyl 3-[(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]pyrazine-2-carboxylate

A mixture of methyl 2-bromopyrazine-3-carboxylate (J. Med. Chem., 1969, 12, 285) (2.2 g, 10.1 mmol) and 4-amino-1-benzylpiperidine (2.0 g, 10.5 mmol) was refluxed in 2-propanol overnight. Thin layer chromatography (10% methanol in ethyl acetate) showed the reaction was complete. The solvent was evaporated, and the crude product dissolved in
15 chloroform (100 mL), which was washed with saturated sodium carbonate solution (20 mL), and dried over magnesium sulfate. The title compound was obtained as a gum (3.8 g). MS 327 (M+1).

Step B. 3-[(1-Benzylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]pyrazine-2-carbohydrazide

20 A mixture of methyl 3-[(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]pyrazine-2-carboxylate (3.0 g, 9.2 mmol) and hydrazine hydrate (6 mL) in ethanol (100 mL) was refluxed with stirring for 2 h. The reaction was cooled and concentrated to give the title compound (3.0 g). MS 327 (M+1).

25 Step C. 2-Oxo-1-(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyrazine

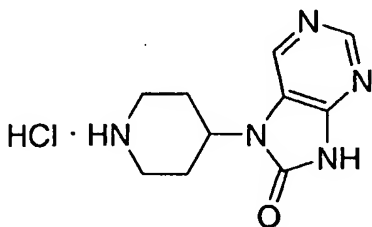
3-[(1-Benzylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]pyrazine-2-carbohydrazide (3.0 g, 9.2 mmol) was dissolved in 1N HCl (20 mL) and water (40 mL), and cooled to 0 °C. To this was added aqueous sodium nitrite (0.8 g, 11.6 mmol) in water (5 mL). After 0.5 h sodium bicarbonate was added and the basic solution extracted with chloroform (5 x 50 mL), which was dried over

magnesium sulfate. The crude acyl azide was dissolved in methoxyethanol (20 mL) and heated at 180 °C for 3 h. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography (10% methanol in chloroform). The reaction was cooled and concentrated, and the crude product purified by preparative thin layer chromatography (silica gel, 75:25 tetrahydrofuran:hexane) to give the title compound (1.7 g). MS 310 (M+1).

Step D. 2-Oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyrazine

2-Oxo-1-(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyrazine (1.7 g, 5.5 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (100 mL) and hydrogenated over 20% palladium on carbon (0.5 g) at 55 psi hydrogen overnight. The catalyst was filtered and solvent evaporated to give the title compound (1.5 g).

INTERMEDIATE 6



7-Piperidin-4-yl-7,9-dihydro-8H-purin-8-one hydrochloride

Step A. 4-Amino-5-[(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]pyrimidine

A mixture of 4,5-diaminopyrimidine (1.0 g, 9.1 mmol), *N*-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-4-piperidone (3.0 g, 15 mmol) and sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (1.2 g, 5.6 mmol) in dichloroethane (60 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 3 d. The reaction was partitioned between chloroform (200 mL) and 3N sodium hydroxide (30 mL). After drying over magnesium sulfate, the organic phase was concentrated to give the title compound as a tan gum. MS 294 (M+1)

Step B. 7-(1-Benzylpiperidin-4-yl)-7,9-dihydro-8H-purin-8-one

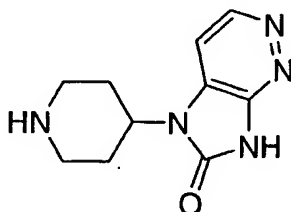
The crude product from Step A, 4-amino-5-[(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]pyrimidine, was refluxed with carbonyldiimidazole (3.0 g, 18 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (250 mL) for 2 d, cooled and concentrated. The crude product was dissolved in ethyl acetate (25-

50 mL), which in four crops gave the title compound as a white crystalline solid (1.3 g). MS 320 (M+1)

Step C. 7-Piperidin-4-yl-7,9-dihydro-8H-purin-8-one hydrochloride

5 A mixture of 7-(1-benzylpiperidin-4-yl)-7,9-dihydro-8H-purin-8-one (1.2 g, 3.7 mmol) in 4N hydrogen chloride in dioxane (50 mL), was stirred vigorously at room temperature for 3 h. The reaction was concentrated in vacuo to give the title compound as a white solid. MS 220 (M+1)

INTERMEDIATE 7



5-Piperidin-4-yl-5,7-dihydro-6H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridazin-6-one

Step A. Benzyl 4-[[1-(methoxycarbonyl)but-3-en-1-yl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate

15 Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (11.2 g, 52.6 mmol) was added to a solution of methyl 2-aminopent-4-enoate (3.4 g, 26.3 mmol), acetic acid (2.37 g, 39.5 mmol) and benzyl 4-oxopiperidine-1-carboxylate (9.21 g, 39.5 mmol) in dichloroethane (60 mL) at room temperature. After 3 h, the reaction was quenched with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, extracted with methylene chloride (3x), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to give the crude product. This was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 0 to 8% methanol in methylene
20 chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (9.42 g). MS 347.2 (M+1).

Step B. Benzyl 4-(5-allyl-2,4-dioxoimidazolidin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate

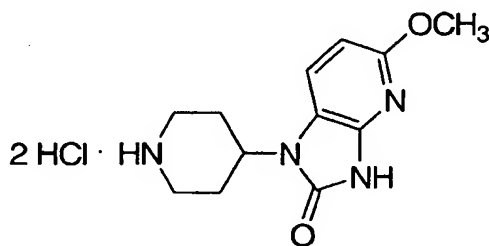
25 Trimethylsilyl isocyanate (1.66 g, 14.4 mmol) was added to a solution of benzyl 4-[[1-(methoxycarbonyl)but-3-en-1-yl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate (2.00 g, 5.77 mmol) and DMAP (71 mg, 0.57 mmol) in THF (30 mL) at room temperature. The reaction was heated at 50 °C for 48 h. The reaction was quenched with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, extracted with methylene chloride (3x), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to give the crude product. The crude product was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 0 to 20% methanol in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (1.66 g). MS 358.2 (M + 1).

Step C. Benzyl 4-(6-oxo-6,7-dihydro-5H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridazin-5-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate

Benzyl 4-(5-allyl-2,4-dioximidazolidin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate (0.480 g, 1.34 mmol) was dissolved in THF (5 mL), and osmium tetroxide (0.05 mL, 2.5% solution in t-butanol) was added followed by a solution of sodium periodate (0.862 g, 4.03 mmol) in water (4 mL). After 24 h, the reaction was diluted with saturated aqueous Na₂SO₃ and NaHCO₃ and extracted with ethyl acetate (4x). The combined organic washes were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to give the crude aldehyde (0.352 g). To a portion of this material (0.250 g, 0.696 mmol) in acetic acid (10 mL) was added hydrazine (0.446 mL, 13.9 mmol). This mixture was heated at 50 °C for 24 h, and then concentrated to dryness. Purification by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 95% water/ acetonitrile → 5% water/ acetonitrile with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) gave the product (0.032 g). MS 354.2 (M + 1).

Step D. 5-Piperidin-4-yl-5,7-dihydro-6H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridazin-6-one

A solution of benzyl 4-(6-oxo-6,7-dihydro-5H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridazin-5-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate (35 mg, 0.099 mmol) and 10% Pd/C (50 mg) in EtOH (5 mL), was hydrogenated under a balloon overnight. The reaction was filtered through Celite with more EtOH and concentrated to afford the title compound (26 mg). MS 220.2 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 85-Methoxy-2-oxo-1-(4-piperidiny)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochlorideStep A. 2-Amino-6-chloro-3-nitropyridine

A solution of ammonium hydroxide (6.6 g, 0.124 mol) and sodium hydroxide (4.8 g, 0.120 mol) in water (45 mL) was added to 2,6-dichloro-3-nitropyridine (12.0 g, 0.62 mol) in ethanol (240 mL). The reaction was refluxed for 2 h, cooled to room temperature and filtered. The pale yellow solid was dried overnight to give the title compound. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.87 (d, J=9 Hz, 1H), 7.8 (br s, 1H), 6.73 (d, J=9 Hz, 1H), 5.9 (br s, 1H).

Step B. 2-Amino-6-methoxy-3-nitropyridine

Sodium metal (0.5 g, 21.7 mmol) was added portion wise to anhydrous methanol (30 mL) under argon. When the sodium was consumed, 1-amino-6-chloro-3-nitropyridine (3.0 g, 17.2 mmol) and methanol (30 mL) were added, and the suspension refluxed for 2 h. The reaction was cooled to room temperature and stirred for 3 h. The yellow solid was filtered and air dried to give the title compound. MS 170 (M+1) ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.29 (d, J=9 Hz, 1H), 7.8 (br s, 1H), 6.14 (d, J=9 Hz, 1H), 5.6 (br s, 1H).

Step C. 2,3-Diamino-6-methoxypyridine

2-Amino-6-methoxy-3-nitropyridine (2.8 g, 16.5 mmol) was dissolved in warm 1:1 methanol/ethanol (200 mL). The solution was cooled, purged with argon, and 10% palladium on carbon was added (0.45 g). Hydrogen was introduced (1 atm) and the reaction stirred until complete. The catalyst was filtered and the solvent evaporated from the filtrate to give the title compound. MS 140 (M+1) ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 6.93 (d, J=8 Hz, 1H), 6.04 (d, J=8 Hz, 1H), 4.15 (br s, 2H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 3.0 (br s, 2H).

Step D. 2-Amino-3-[(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]-6-methoxypyridine

Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (3.39 g, 16.0 mmol) was added to a solution of 2,3-diamino-6-methoxypyridine (2.23 g, 16.0 mmol) and *N*-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-4-piperidone (7.66 g, 38.4 mmol) in dichloroethane (50 mL) at room temperature. The reaction was quenched with water (50 mL) and stirred overnight, then extracted with chloroform and washed with 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide, water and saturated sodium chloride solution. After drying over sodium sulfate, the solution was filtered and evaporated to give the crude product. This was purified by chromatography, where the more polar product was isolated (silica gel, 50% ethyl acetate hexane, R_f = 0.36), to give the title compound. MS 323 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.99 (d, J=8 Hz, 1H), 6.05 (d, J=8 Hz, 1H), 4.45 (br s), 4.03 (br s), 3.83 (s, 3H), 3.15 (m, 1H), 2.86 (m, 2H), 1.91 (d, J=12 Hz, 2H), 1.5 (br s, 11H), 1.26 (br s, 2H).

Step E. 5-Methoxy-2-oxo-1-(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine

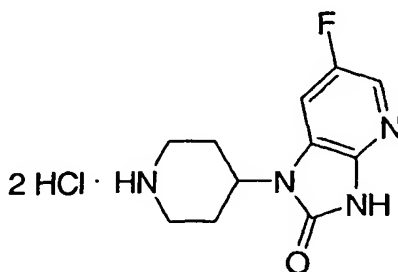
Carbonyldiimidazole (1.6 g, 9.8 mmol) was added to a solution of 2-amino-3-[(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]-6-methoxypyridine (1.29 g, 4.00 mmol) in acetonitrile (100 mL) at room temperature. The reaction was stirred until all the starting material was consumed. Methanol was added to the reaction and the solution stirred for several hours, then

the solvent was evaporated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with water and saturated brine, and then dried over magnesium sulfate. The crude product was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 2.5% to 5% methanol in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound. MS 349 (M+1) ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.50 (br s, 1H), 7.29 (d, J=8 Hz, 1H), 6.43 (d, J=8 Hz, 1H), 4.46 (m, 1H), 4.31 (br s, 2H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 2.85 (br s, 2H), 2.13 (m, 2H), 1.85 (d, J=12 Hz, 2H), 1.50 (s, 9H).

Step F. 5-Methoxy-2-oxo-1-(4-piperidiny)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine

5-Methoxy-2-oxo-1-(1-t-butoxycarbonylpiperidin-4-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (100 mg, 0.287 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (2.5 mL) and a solution of 2N hydrochloric acid in ether (3 mL) was added at room temperature. After 2 h, the volatiles were removed in vacuo, to give the title compound (61 mg). MS 249.1 (M + 1).

INTERMEDIATE 9



4-Fluoro-2-oxo-1-(4-piperidiny)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine

Step A. N-(5-Fluoropyridin-2-yl)-2,2-dimethylpropanamide

To a 0 °C solution of 2-amino-5-fluoropyridine (1.00 g, 8.92 mmol) and triethylamine (1.35 g, 13.4 mmol) in dichloromethane (30 mL) was added trimethylacetyl chloride (1.29 g, 10.7 mmol) and DMAP (0.11 g, 0.89 mmol). The solution was allowed to warm to room temperature. After 4 h, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ was added, the layers separated and the aqueous phase backwashed with DCM. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated and the residue purified by silica gel chromatography (5% → 40% EtOAc / hexanes) to give the title compound (1.34 g). MS 197.3 (M+1).

Step B. N-(3-Azido-5-fluoropyridin-2-yl)-2,2-dimethylpropanamide

To a -78 °C solution of *N*-(5-fluoropyridin-2-yl)-2,2-dimethylpropanamide (1.34 g, 6.83 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (25 mL) was added *tert*-butyllithium (1.31 mL of a 1.7 M solution, 20.5 mmol) drop wise. After 3 h at -78 °C, 4-dodecylbenzenesulfonyl azide (3.60 g, 10.2 mmol) was added at the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature. After 1 h, saturated aqueous NH₄Cl was added, and the tetrahydrofuran was removed via rotary evaporator. Dichloromethane was added, the layers separated and the aqueous phase backwashed with DCM. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated and the residue purified by two successive silica gel chromatographies (10% → 80% EtOAc / hexanes, then 5% → 42% EtOAc / hexanes) to give the title compound (0.275 g). MS 234.0 (M+1).

Step C. 3-Azido-5-fluoropyridin-2-amine

N-(3-Azido-5-fluoropyridin-2-yl)-2,2-dimethylpropanamide (275 mg, 1.16 mmol) in 3 N HCl (5 mL) was heated to 100 °C. After 2 h, the volatiles were removed in vacuo, to give the title compound as its HCl salt (180 mg). MS 154.2 (M + 1).

Step D. 5-Fluoropyridine-2,3-diamine

The HCl salt of 3-azido-5-fluoropyridin-2-amine (1.90 g, 10.0 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) and treated with MP-Carbonate (Argonaut, 11.5 g). After 1 h, the mixture was filtered, rinsed with more tetrahydrofuran, and concentrated. This residue was dissolved in ethanol (50 mL), purged with argon, and 10% palladium on carbon was added (0.15 g). Hydrogen was introduced (1 atm) and the reaction stirred until complete. The catalyst was filtered and the solvent evaporated from the filtrate to give the title compound (1.18 g). MS 128.0 (M+1)

Step E. *tert*-Butyl 4-[(2-amino-5-fluoropyridin-3-yl)amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate

Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (2.95 g, 13.9 mmol) was added to a solution of 5-fluoropyridine-2,3-diamine (1.18 g, 9.28 mmol), acetic acid (0.56 g, 9.28 mmol) and I-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-piperidone (1.85 g, 9.28 mmol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (20 mL) at room temperature. After 1h, the reaction was quenched with water (20 mL) and extracted with dichloromethane. After drying over sodium sulfate, the solution was filtered and evaporated to give the crude product. This was purified by chromatography, (silica gel, 5% → 15% MeOH / DCM; then C-18, 95% water/ acetonitrile → 5% water/ acetonitrile with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) to give the title compound (0.73 g). MS 311.2 (M+1).

Step F. *tert*-Butyl 4-(6-fluoro-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate

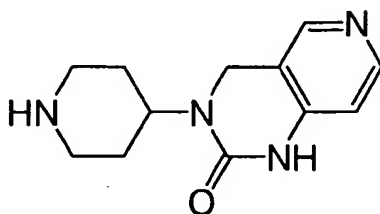
Carbonyldiimidazole (1.53 g, 9.41 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl 4-[(2-amino-5-fluoropyridin-3-yl)amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate (0.73 g, 2.35 mmol) in
 5 acetonitrile (10 mL) at room temperature. The reaction was stirred until all the starting material was consumed (approximately 2 h) and then the solvent was evaporated in vacuo. The residue was diluted with water, extracted with dichloromethane (3 x), dried over magnesium sulfate and then concentrated. The crude product was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 1% to 10% methanol in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (0.309 g). MS
 10 337.2 (M+1)

Step G. 4-Fluoro-2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine

tert-Butyl 4-(6-fluoro-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate (340 mg, 1.01 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (5 mL) and
 15 trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL) was added. After 2h, the reaction was concentrated, diluted with dichloromethane (5 mL) and a solution of 1N hydrochloric acid in 1,4-dioxane (2 mL) was added at room temperature. Concentration afforded the title compound (302 mg). MS 237.2 (M + 1)
¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDOD₃) δ 7.92 (br s, 1H), 7.70 (dd, 1H), 4.60 (m, 1H), 3.60 (s, 2H), 3.25 (dd, 2H), 2.70 (m, 2H), 2.10 (d, 2H).

20

INTERMEDIATE 10



25 3-Piperidin-4-yl-3,4-dihydropyrido[4,3-*d*]pyrimidin-2(1*H*)-one

Step A. Ethyl 4-[(4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]pyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate

Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (1.70 g, 8.03 mmol) and acetic acid (0.29, 4.82 mmol) were added to a solution of *N*-Boc-4-amino-3-pyridine carboxaldehyde (0.36 g, 1.61
 30 mmol) and ethyl 4-aminopiperidine-1-carboxylate (0.33 g, 1.93 mmol) in dichloroethane (5 mL) at room temperature. The reaction was stirred overnight, and quenched with saturated aqueous

sodium bicarbonate. This was separated, extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organics were dried over sodium sulfate. The solution was filtered and evaporated to give the crude product. This was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 0 to 12% methanol in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (0.24 g). MS 379.2.

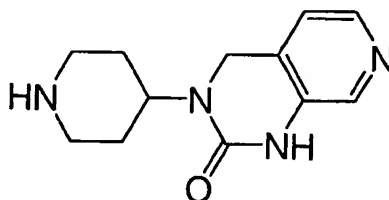
5
Step B. Ethyl 4-(2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[4,3-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate

Trifluoroacetic acid (0.50 mL) was added to a solution of the material from Step A (0.24g, 0.63 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL). After stirring overnight, another 0.5 mL of trifluoroacetic acid was added. After an additional 2h, the reaction was concentrated. This material was dissolved in acetonitrile (5 mL) and carbonyldiimidazole (0.31 g, 1.89 mmol) was added at room temperature. After 2 h, the acetonitrile was evaporated in vacuo, the residue partitioned between 1N NaOH and dichloromethane, and the organic phase dried over magnesium sulfate. The crude product was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 10 to 15% methanol in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (0.089 g). MS 305.3.

Step C. 3-Piperidin-4-yl-3,4-dihydropyrido[4,3-*d*]pyrimidin-2(1*H*)-one

Ethyl 4-(2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[4,3-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate (0.089 g, 0.29 mmol) was diluted in 1N NaOH (5 mL) and heated to reflux. After 4 h, the reaction was concentrated in vacuo, the residue was diluted with MeOH : DCM, filtered and concentrated. The crude material was purified by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 5% to 95% 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid/acetonitrile in 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid gradient elution) to give TFA salt of the title compound (0.12 g). MS 233.3 (M + 1).

25
INTERMEDIATE 11



3-Piperidin-4-yl-3,4-dihydropyrido[3,4-*d*]pyrimidin-2(1*H*)-one

30
Step A. Ethyl 4-[(3-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]pyridin-4-yl)methyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate

Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (0.57 g, 2.70 mmol) and acetic acid (0.41, 6.75 mmol) were added to a solution of *N*-Boc-3-amino-4-pyridine carboxaldehyde (0.50 g, 2.25 mmol) and ethyl 4-aminopiperidine-1-carboxylate (0.47 g, 2.70 mmol) in dichloroethane (5 mL) at room temperature. The reaction was stirred overnight, and quenched with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. This was separated, extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organics were dried over sodium sulfate. The solution was filtered and evaporated to give the crude product. This was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 1 to 12% methanol in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (0.47 g). MS 379.3.

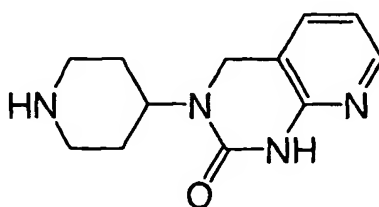
10 Step B. Ethyl 4-(2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[3,4-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate

Trifluoroacetic acid (1.43 g) was added to a solution of the material from Step A (0.47 g, 1.24 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL). After stirring overnight, the reaction was concentrated. This material was dissolved in acetonitrile (5 mL) and carbonyldiimidazole (0.62 g, 3.73 mmol) was added at room temperature. After 2 d, the acetonitrile was evaporated in vacuo, the residue partitioned between 1N NaOH and dichloromethane, and the organic phase dried over magnesium sulfate. The crude product was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 1 to 20% methanol in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (0.15 g). MS 305.2.

20 Step C. 3-Piperidin-4-yl-3,4-dihydropyrido[3,4-*d*]pyrimidin-2(1*H*)-one

Ethyl 4-(2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[3,4-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl)piperidine-1-carboxylate (0.15 g, 0.48 mmol) was diluted in 1N NaOH (10 mL) and heated to reflux. After 5 h, the reaction was concentrated in vacuo, the residue was diluted with MeOH : DCM, filtered and concentrated. The crude material was purified by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 5% to 95% 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid/acetonitrile in 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid gradient elution) to give TFA salt of the title compound (0.17 g). MS 233.3 (M + 1).

INTERMEDIATE 12



3-Piperidin-4-yl-3,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-*d*]pyrimidin-2(1*H*)-oneStep A. 2-[(2,4-Dimethoxybenzyl)amino]nicotinonitrile

2,4-Dimethoxybenzylamine (2.90 g, 17.3 mmol) and triethylamine (1.75 g, 17.3 mmol) were added sequentially to a solution of 2-chloronicotinonitrile (2.0 g, 14.4 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylacetamide (29 mL). The reaction was heated at 80°C for 4 h, quenched with water and extracted with diethyl ether (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with water, saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 0-5% ethyl acetate (with 0.1 triethylamine) in dichloromethane gradient elution) to produce the title compound (2.80 g). MS 270.3 (M + 1).

Step B. 3-(Aminomethyl)-*N*-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)pyridin-2-amine

Lithium aluminum hydride (1.0 M in THF, 11.4 mL, 11.4 mmol) was added slowly to a solution of 2-[(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)amino]nicotinonitrile (2.80 g, 10.4 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (35 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature and stir for 4 h. The reaction was carefully quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium sulfate, filtered with copious dichloromethane and concentrated to produce the title compound (2.92 g). MS 274.3 (M+1).

Step C. *tert*-Butyl 4-[(2-[(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)amino]pyridin-3-yl)methyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate

Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (0.78 g, 3.66 mmol) and acetic acid (0.22 g, 3.66 mmol) were added to a solution of a portion of the material from Step B (1.00 g, <3.66 mmol) and *N*-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-piperidone (0.73 g, 3.66 mmol) in dichloroethane (20 mL) at room temperature. After 3 h, the reaction was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, dried over sodium sulfate, the solution was filtered and evaporated to give the product (1.83 g). MS 457.3 (M+1).

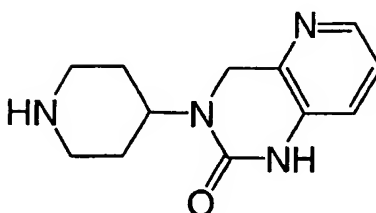
Step D. *tert*-Butyl 4-[1-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl]piperidine-1-carboxylate

Carbonyldiimidazole (0.65 g, 4.0 mmol) was added to a solution of the material from Step C in dimethylformamide (20 mL) and the reaction was heated to 150 °C. After 1 d, further carbonyldiimidazole (0.65 g, 4.0 mmol) was added and the reaction heated for an additional 3 h. The reaction was diluted with water and extracted with dichloromethane, and the organic phase dried over sodium sulfate. The crude product was purified by chromatography

(silica gel, 20 to 80% ethyl acetate in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (0.35 g). MS 483.3 (M+1).

Step E. 3-Piperidin-4-yl-3,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-*d*]pyrimidin-2(1*H*)-one

5 *tert*-Butyl 4-[1-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl]piperidine-1-carboxylate (0.21 g, 0.43 mmol) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL) and stirred overnight. The reaction was then heated to 50 °C for 3 h and concentrated to afford the bisTFA salt of the title compound (0.11 g). MS 233.3 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 135 3-Piperidin-4-yl-3,4-dihydropyrido[3,2-d]pyrimidin-2(1H)-oneStep A. 3-[(2,4-Dimethoxybenzyl)amino]pyridine-2-carbonitrile

2,4-Dimethoxybenzylamine (3.29 g, 19.7 mmol) and triethylamine (1.99 g, 19.7 mmol) were added sequentially to a solution of 2-cyano-3-fluoropyridine (2.0 g, 16.4 mmol) (Sakamoto et. al., *Chem. Pharm. Bull.*, 1985, 33, 565-71) in *N,N*-dimethylacetamide (29 mL).

- 10 The reaction was heated at 80 °C for 4 h, quenched with water and extracted with diethyl ether (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed water, saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 0-12% ethyl acetate (with 0.1 triethylamine) in dichloromethane gradient elution) to produce the title compound (3.25 g). MS 270.3 (M + 1).

15

Step B. 2-(Aminomethyl)-N-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)pyridin-3-amine

Lithium aluminum hydride (1.0 M in THF, 13.3 mL, 13.3 mmol) was added slowly to a solution of 3-[(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)amino]pyridine-2-carbonitrile (3.25 g, 12.1 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (40 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 4 h. The reaction was carefully quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium sulfate, filtered with copious dichloromethane and concentrated to produce the title compound (2.68 g). MS 274.3 (M + 1).

20

25 Step C. *tert*-Butyl 4-[(3-[(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)amino]pyridin-2-yl)methyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate

Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (1.16 g, 5.49 mmol) and acetic acid (0.22 g, 3.66 mmol) were added to a solution of a portion of the material from Step B (1.72 g, 3.66 mmol) and *N*-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-piperidone (0.88 g, 4.39 mmol) in dichloroethane (20 mL) at room temperature. After 3 h, the reaction was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, dried over sodium sulfate, the solution was filtered and evaporated to give the product (1.72 g). MS 457.3 (M+1).

30

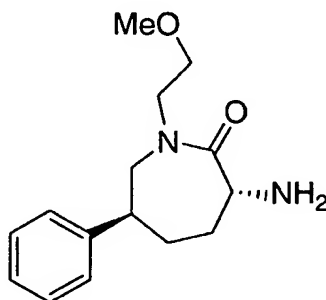
Step D. *tert*-Butyl 4-[1-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[3,2-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl]piperidine-1-carboxylate

Carbonyldiimidazole (1.22 g, 7.53 mmol) was added to a solution of the material from Step C in dimethylformamide (20 mL) and the reaction was heated to 150 °C overnight. The reaction was diluted with water and extracted with dichloromethane, and the organic phase dried over sodium sulfate. The crude product was purified by chromatography (silica gel, 30 to 100% ethyl acetate in methylene chloride gradient elution), which gave the title compound (0.10 g). MS 483.3 (M+1).

Step E. 3-Piperidin-4-yl-3,4-dihydropyrido[3,2-*d*]pyrimidin-2(1*H*)-one

tert-Butyl 4-[1-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[3,2-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl]piperidine-1-carboxylate (0.10 g, 0.21 mmol) was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL) and stirred overnight. The reaction was concentrated to afford the bis-TFA salt of the title compound (0.048 g). MS 233.2 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 14



(3*R*,6*S*)-3-Amino-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-6-phenylazepan-2-one

Step A: 2-Bromo-*N*-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)prop-2-en-1-amine

Triethylamine (16.0 mL, 114 mmol) was added to a solution of 2,4-dimethoxybenzylamine hydrochloride (11.1 g, 54.5 mmol) and 2,3-dibromopropene (10.9 g, 54.5 mmol) in dichloromethane (200 mL). After 18 h, water was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography [100% dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/ 5% (10% ammonium hydroxide/ methanol)] gave the title compound (7.85 g).

Step B: Benzyl (1R)-1-{[(2-bromoprop-2-enyl)(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl) amino]carbonyl}but-3-enylcarbamate

1-[3-(Dimethylamino)propyl]-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (55 mg, 0.285 mmol) was added to a solution of 2-bromo-*N*-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)prop-2-en-1-amine (73 mg, 0.256 mmol) and (2*R*)-2-{[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}pent-4-enoic acid (71 mg, 0.285 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL). After 18 h the mixture was concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/ hexanes → 30% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (77 mg). MS 517 (M+1).

Step C: Benzyl (1R)-1-{[(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)(2-phenylprop-2-enyl)amino]carbonyl}but-3-enylcarbamate

Tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (1.11 g, 0.962 mmol) was added to a solution of benzyl (1*R*)-1-{[(2-bromoprop-2-enyl)(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl) amino]carbonyl}but-3-enylcarbamate (2.49 g, 4.81 mmol), phenylboronic acid (0.65 g, 5.29 mmol) and sodium carbonate (2M in water; 4.81 mL, 9.63 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (54 mL) and water (20 mL), and the mixture heated to 60 °C. After 1 h, the mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/ hexanes → 30% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (2.02 g). MS 515 (M+1).

Step D: Benzyl (3*R*)-1-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-oxo-6-phenyl-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-ylcarbamate

[1,3-bis-(2,4,6-trimethylphenyl-2-imidazolidinylidene)dichloro(phenylmethylene)-(tricyclohexylphosphine)ruthenium] (Grubbs second generation catalyst) (0.68 g, 0.79 mmol) was added to a solution of benzyl (1*R*)-1-{[(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)(2-phenylprop-2-enyl)amino]carbonyl}but-3-enylcarbamate (2.02 g, 3.93 mmol) in dichloromethane (395 mL) and heated to 40 °C. After 40 h, the mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/ hexanes → 30% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (1.00 g). MS 487 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.39-7.31 (m, 5H), 7.26-7.19 (m, 3H), 7.17 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 6.99 (d, J = 7.1 Hz, 2H), 6.41 (dd, J = 8.3, 2.0 Hz, 1H), 6.33 (s, 1H), 6.22 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 5.77-5.76 (m, 1H), 5.16-5.09 (m,

3H), 4.82 (d, J = 14.7 Hz, 1H), 4.65 (dd, J = 17.6, 2.7 Hz, 1H), 4.54 (d, J = 14.4 Hz, 1H), 3.93 (d, J = 17.6 Hz, 1H), 3.77 (s, 3H), 3.64 (s, 3H), 2.91-2.86 (m, 1H), 2.42-2.36 (m, 1H).

Step E: Benzyl (3R)-2-oxo-6-phenyl-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate

5 A solution of L-methionine (2.56 g, 17.2 mmol) in trifluoroacetic acid (15 mL) was added to a solution of benzyl (3R)-1-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-oxo-6-phenyl-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate (0.84 g, 1.72 mmol) in dichloromethane (20 mL). After 18 h, the mixture was concentrated and water was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with water (2x), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2x), saturated brine,
10 dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/ hexanes → 50% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (0.44 g). MS 337 (M+1).

Step F: *tert*-Butyl (3R,6S)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-ylcarbamate

15 10% Palladium on carbon (75 mg) was added to a solution of benzyl (3R)-2-oxo-6-phenyl-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate (596 mg, 1.77 mmol) and di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (773 mg, 3.54 mmol) in ethyl acetate (30 mL). The reaction vessel is evacuated and back-filled with nitrogen (3x), then back-filled with hydrogen (1 atm). After 2 h, the mixture was filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (30% ethyl acetate/
20 hexanes → 50% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (289 mg).

Step G: *tert*-Butyl (3R,6S)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-ylcarbamate

 Sodium hydride (60% dispersion in mineral oil; 6.2 mg, 0.158 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6R)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-ylcarbamate (40 mg, 0.131 mmol)
25 and 2-bromoethyl methyl ether (0.013 mL, 0.138 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (2 mL) at 0 °C. After addition, the mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 4 h, the reaction was quenched with water and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water (3x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/ hexanes → 30% ethyl
30 acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (41 mg). MS 363 (M+1).

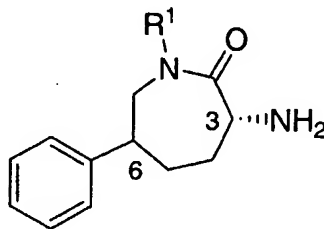
Step H: (3R,6S)-3-Amino-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-6-phenylazepan-2-one

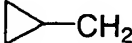
 Trifluoroacetic acid (2.5 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-ylcarbamate (41 mg, 0.113 mmol) in dichloromethane (5

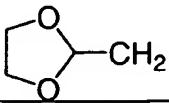
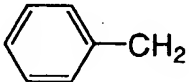
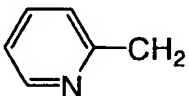
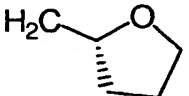
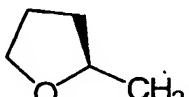
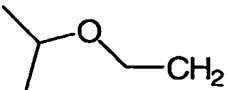
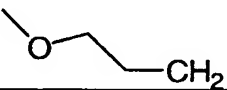
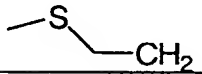
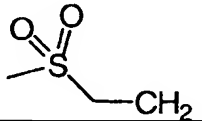
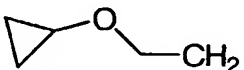
mL). After 1 h, the solution was concentrated. Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. MS 263 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.32 (t, J = 7.3 Hz, 2H), 7.25-7.22 (m, 1H), 7.18 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 2H), 3.83-3.76 (m, 3H), 3.56-3.49 (m, 3H), 3.35 (s, 3H), 3.34-3.30 (m, 1H), 2.77-2.72 (m, 1H), 2.13-2.10 (m, 1H), 2.03-1.94 (m, 2H), 1.74-1.68 (m, 1H).

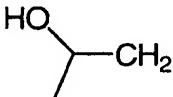
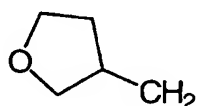
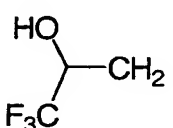
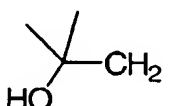
Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Intermediate 14, the Intermediates in Table I-1 were prepared.

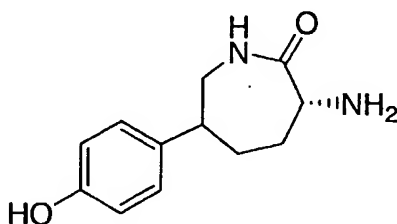
TABLE I-1



Intermediate	C-3	C-6	R ¹	MS (M+1)
15	R	S	H	205
16	R	R	H	205
17	R	S	CH ₃	219
18	R	S	CH ₂ CH ₃	233
19	R	S	CH ₂ CF ₃	287
20	R	S	CH ₂ CO ₂ CH ₃	277
21	R	S	(CH ₂) ₂ OCH ₂ CH ₃	277
22	R	S	CH ₂ CN	244
23	R	S	 CH ₂	259

24	R	S		291.1
25	R	S	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{F}$	251.1
26	R	S	CH_2CHF_2	269.1
27	R	S	CH_2CHCF_2	281
28	R	S		295
29	R	S		296
30	R	S		289
31	R	S		289
32	R	S		291
33	R	S		277
34	R	S		279
35	R	S		311
36	R	S	$(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{OCF}_3$	317
37	R	S		289

38	R	S		263.2
39	R	S		289
40	R	S		317.1
41	R	S	Ph	281
42	R	S		277.2

INTERMEDIATE 43

5

(3R)-3-Amino-6-(4-hydroxyphenyl)azepan-2-one

Step A: Benzyl (3R)-6-bromo-1-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate

[1,3-bis-(2,4,6-trimethylphenyl-2-imidazolidinylidene)dichloro(phenylmethylene)
 10 -(tricyclohexylphosphine)ruthenium] (Grubbs second generation catalyst) (1.78 g, 2.05 mmol)
 was added to a solution of benzyl (1R)-1-[(2-bromoprop-2-enyl)(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)
 amino]carbonyl}but-3-enylcarbamate (5.29 g, 10.2 mmol) in dichloromethane (1000 mL) and
 heated to 40 °C. After 18 h, the mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and
 concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/ hexanes → 30% ethyl
 15 acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (0.79 g). MS 489 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃)
 δ 7.36-7.35 (m, 4H), 7.33-7.30 (m, 1H), 7.17-7.15 (m, 1H), 6.46-6.43 (m, 2H), 6.13 (d, J = 6.1
 Hz, 1H), 6.04-6.03 (m, 1H), 5.13-5.07 (m, 2H), 4.93-4.88 (m, 1H), 4.75 (d, J = 14.4 Hz, 1H),

4.64-4.60 (m, 1H), 4.47 (d, J = 14.4 Hz, 1H), 3.86 (d, J = 18.3 Hz, 1H), 3.81 (s, 3H), 3.80 (s, 3H), 2.68-2.63 (m, 1H), 2.24-2.05 (m, 1H).

Step B: Benzyl (3R)-6-bromo-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate

5 A solution of L-methionine (274 mg, 1.84 mmol) in trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL) was added to a solution of benzyl (3R)-6-bromo-1-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate (90 mg, 0.184 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL). After 18 h, the mixture was concentrated. Purification by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 95% water/ acetonitrile → 5% water/ acetonitrile with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) gave the title compound (17
10 mg). MS 339 (M+1).

Step C: Benzyl (3R)-6-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate

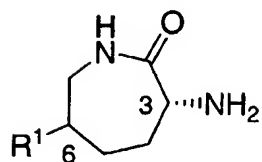
 Palladium acetate (1 mg, 0.003 mmol) was added to a solution of benzyl (3R)-6-bromo-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate (18 mg, 0.053 mmol), 4-
15 hydroxyphenylboronic acid (9 mg, 0.064 mmol), sodium carbonate (2M in water; 0.066 mL, 0.133 mmol) and trisodium 3-[bis(3-sulfonatophenyl)phosphino] benzenesulfonate (5 mg, 0.088 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (0.45 mL) and water (0.15 mL) and heated to 80 °C. After 1.5 h, the mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and filtered. Purification by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 95% water/ acetonitrile → 5% water/ acetonitrile with 0.1%
20 trifluoroacetic acid) gave the title compound (15 mg). MS 353 (M+1).

Step D: (3R)-3-Amino-6-(4-hydroxyphenyl)azepan-2-one

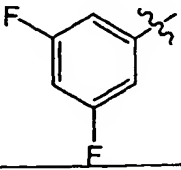
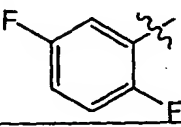
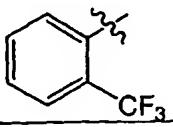
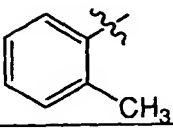
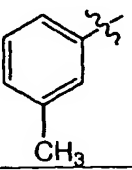
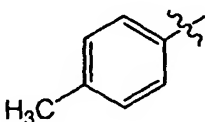
 10% Palladium on carbon (10 mg) was added to a solution of benzyl (3R)-6-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate (15 mg, 0.043 mmol) in
25 toluene (5 mL) and methanol (1 mL). The reaction vessel is evacuated and back-filled with nitrogen (3x), then back-filled with hydrogen (1 atm). After 18 h, the mixture was filtered and concentrated. MS 221 (M+1).

Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Intermediate 43, the
30 Intermediates in Table I-2 were prepared. Compounds along the route to the Intermediates in Table I-2, can be further processed (e.g. alkylation of N1) according to those skilled in the art following essentially the same procedures as outlined above to afford another set of intermediates.

TABLE I-2

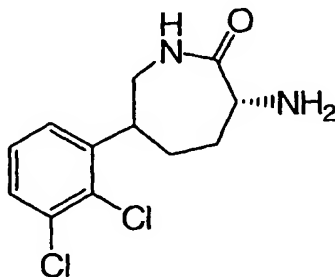


Intermediate	C-3	C-6	R ¹	MS (M+1)
44	R	R or S		223.2
45	R	R or S		223.2
46	R	R or S		223.2
47	R	R or S		241.2
48	R	R or S		206.3
49	R	R or S		206.3
50	R	R or S		206.2

51	R	R or S		241.2
52	R	R or S		241.2
53	R	R or S		273.2
54	R	R or S		219.2
55	R	R or S		219.2
56	R	R or S		219.2

INTERMEDIATE 57

5

(3R)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-dichlorophenyl)azepan-2-one

Step A. Benzyl (5R or S)-N,N-bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-dichlorophenyl)-6-nitro-D-norleucinate

To a slurry of 1-bromo-2,3-dichlorobenzene (1.46 g, 6.46 mmol) in diethyl ether (10 mL) was added magnesium (0.157 g, 6.46 mmol) and a crystal of iodine. This mixture was refluxed for 3 h, and then cooled to room temperature. A solution of benzyl (2R,5E)-2-[bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-6-nitrohex-5-enoate (0.50 g, 1.08 mmol) in diethyl ether (10 mL) was cooled to 0 °C, and 2.0 mL of the Grignard solution prepared above was added. After 1 and 2 h, respectively, 2.0 and 1.0 mL of the Grignard solution was added. The reaction was quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride, the phases separated and the organic phase washed with saturated aqueous sodium potassium tartrate and brine. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give a residue that was purified by silica gel chromatography (0% → 3% methanol / dichloromethane) to give the title compound (0.52 g). MS 411.0 (M+1 – 2Boc).

Step B. Benzyl N²,N²-bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-dichlorophenyl)-D-lysinate

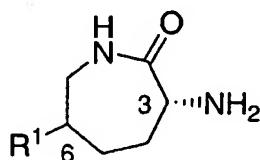
To an EtOH rinsed (4x5 mL) slurry of Raney Ni (1 mL) was added a solution of benzyl (5R or S)-N,N-bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-dichlorophenyl)-6-nitro-D-norleucinate (0.52 g, 0.85 mmol) in EtOH (5 mL). This slurry was hydrogenated under a balloon of hydrogen for 2h. The reaction was filtered through Celite with more EtOH and concentrated to afford the title compound (0.45 g). MS 581 (M+1).

Step C. (3R)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-dichlorophenyl)azepan-2-one

To a solution benzyl N²,N²-bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-dichlorophenyl)-D-lysinate (0.45 g, 0.77 mmol) in MeOH (4 mL) and water (2 mL) was added 1N NaOH (3.1 mL, 3.1 mmol). This solution was heated to 40 °C for 6 h, then neutralized with 1N HCl and concentrated. To a solution of this residue in DCM (10 mL) were added EDC (0.19 g, 0.97 mmol) and HOAT (53 mg, 0.39 mmol) followed by triethylamine (0.32 mL, 0.73 mmol). After 2 h, NaHCO₃ was added, the layers separated and the aqueous phase backwashed with DCM. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. This residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (0.5% → 10% MeOH/ DCM) to give di-tert-butyl [(3R)-6-(2,3-dichlorophenyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]imidodicarbonate (300 mg). MS 473 (M+1). Standard deprotection of a portion of this material gave the title product. MS 273 (M+1).

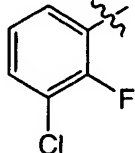
Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Intermediate 57, the Intermediates in Table I-3 were prepared. Compounds along the route to the Intermediates in Table I-3, can be further processed (e.g. alkylation of N1) according to those skilled in the art following essentially the same procedures as outlined above to afford another set of

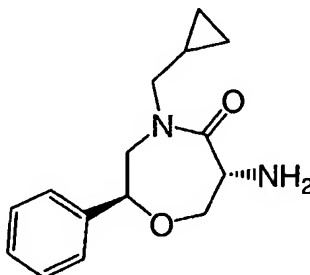
5 intermediates.

TABLE I-3

10

Intermediate	C-3	C-6	R ¹	MS (M+1)
58	R	R or S		239.1
59	R	R or S		439.2 diBoc
60	R	R or S		211.3
61	R	R or S		371.3 diBoc
62	R	R or S		219.2

63	R	R or S		257.2
----	---	--------	---	-------

INTERMEDIATE 64

5

(2S,6R)-6-Amino-4-(cyclopropylmethyl)-2-phenyl-1,4-oxazepan-5-one

Step A. *tert*-Butyl cyclopropylmethyl[(2S)-2-hydroxy-2-phenylethyl]carbamate

(S)-Styrene oxide (4.83 g, 40.3 mmol) and cyclopropanemethylamine (4.00 g, 56.4 mmol) were dissolved in isopropyl alcohol (100 mL) and heated to reflux. After 8 h, the reaction was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and concentrated. Triethylamine (5.61 mL, 40.3 mmol) was added to a solution of the crude amine and di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (8.78 g, 40.3 mmol) in dichloromethane (100 mL). After 18 h, water was added, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/hexanes → 20% ethyl acetate/hexanes) gave the title compound (5.48 g).

Step B. Methyl *N*-[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]-O-[(1S)-2-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)(cyclopropylmethyl)amino]-1-phenylethyl]-D-serinate

Boron trifluoride diethyl etherate (0.10 mL, 0.84 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl cyclopropylmethyl[(2S)-2-hydroxy-2-phenylethyl]carbamate (2.45 g, 8.39 mmol) and 1-benzyl 2-methyl (2R)-aziridine-1,2-dicarboxylate (1.97 g, 8.39 mmol) in chloroform (20 mL). After 3 h, the reaction was concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (100% hexanes → 30% ethyl acetate/hexanes) gave the title compound (1.21 g).

Step C. *N*-[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]-*O*-{(1*S*)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)(cyclopropylmethyl)amino]-1-phenylethyl}-D-serine

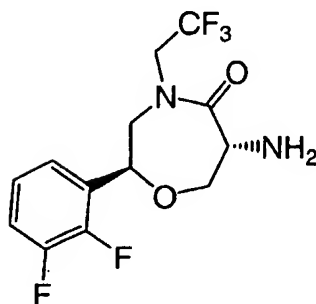
Aqueous sodium hydroxide (1*N*; 3.81 mL, 3.81 mmol) was added to a solution of methyl *N*-[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]-*O*-{(1*S*)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)(cyclopropylmethyl)amino]-1-phenylethyl}-D-serinate (1.30 g, 2.46 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL). After 18 h, aqueous hydrochloric acid (1*N*; 3.81 mL, 3.81 mmol) was added. The mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x), and the combined organic extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to give the title compound. (1.27 g) MS 535 (M+Na).

10 Step D. Benzyl (2*S*,6*R*)-4-(cyclopropylmethyl)-5-oxo-2-phenyl-1,4-oxazepan-6-ylcarbamate

Trifluoroacetic acid (5.0 mL) was added to a solution *N*-[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]-*O*-{(1*S*)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)(cyclopropylmethyl)amino]-1-phenylethyl}-D-serine (1.27 g, 2.47 mmol) in dichloromethane (15 mL). After 2 h, the mixture was concentrated and azeotroped with toluene (3x) to give the crude amine. Diphenylphosphoryl azide (1.07 mL, 4.95 mmol) was added to a solution of the crude amine and 4-methylmorpholine (0.82 mL, 7.41 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (100 mL). After 18 h, the mixture was concentrated and water was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the organic layer was washed with water (2x) and saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/ hexanes → 50% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (0.426 g). MS 395 (M+1).

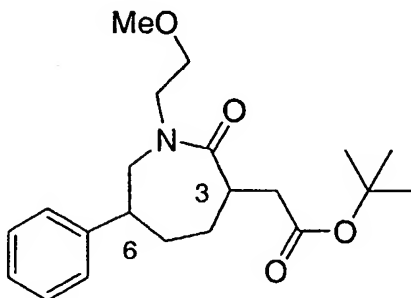
Step E. (2*S*,6*R*)-6-Amino-4-(cyclopropylmethyl)-2-phenyl-1,4-oxazepan-5-one

10% Palladium on carbon (20 mg) was added to a solution (2*S*,6*R*)-6-amino-4-(cyclopropylmethyl)-2-phenyl-1,4-oxazepan-5-one (179 mg, 0.454 mmol) in ethanol (15 mL). The reaction vessel was evacuated and back-filled with nitrogen (3x), then back-filled with hydrogen (1 atm). After 18 h, the mixture was filtered and concentrated to give the title compound (113 mg). MS 261 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.40-7.31 (m, 5H), 4.53 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 4.10-4.03 (m, 2H), 3.90 (dd, J = 15.9, 7.1 Hz, 1H), 3.80-3.65 (m, 2H), 3.36 (d, J = 15.9 Hz, 1H), 3.03 (dd, J = 13.9, 6.6 Hz, 1H), 1.06-1.01 (m, 1H), 0.64-0.53 (m, 2H), 0.33-0.25 (m, 2H).

INTERMEDIATE 65

(2S,6R)-6-Amino-2-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-oxazepan-5-one

- 5 The title compound was prepared using a similar procedure to Intermediate 64. MS 325 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 66

tert-Butyl[1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]acetate

Step A. 1-(2-Methoxyethyl)-6-phenylazepan-2-one

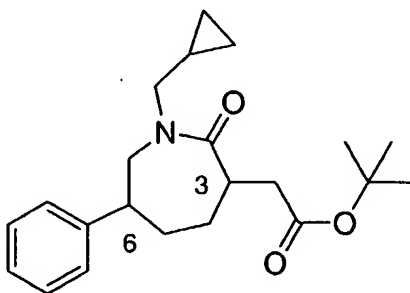
- 15 Sodium hydride (60% dispersion in mineral oil; 0.32 g, 8.03 mmol) was added to a solution of 6-phenylazepan-2-one (0.76 g, 4.02 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (15 mL) at 0°C, followed by the addition of 2-bromoethyl methyl ether (0.837 g, 6.03 mmol), and the mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 21 h, water was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with water (3x), saturated brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. MS 248 (M+1).

Step B. tert-Butyl[1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]acetate

20 Lithium diisopropylamide (1.8 M in heptane/tetrahydrofuran/ethylbenzene; 0.58 g, 5.41 mmol) was added to a solution of 1-(2-methoxyethyl)-6-phenylazepan-2-one (1.03 g, 4.16

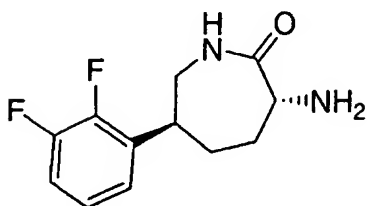
mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (40 mL) at -78°C . After 2 h, *tert*-butylbromoacetate was added. After an additional 1.5 h, the reaction was quenched with methanol and allowed to warm to ambient temperature and concentrated. Purification by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 95% water/ acetonitrile \rightarrow 5% water/ acetonitrile with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) gave 450 mg (cis isomer) and 350 mg (trans isomer) of the title compound. MS 362 (M+1). cis isomer: ^1H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.29 (t, $J = 7.6$ Hz, 2H), 7.26 (m, 1H), 7.22-7.20 (m, 2H), 4.04 (br d, $J = 15.2$ Hz, 1H), 3.84 (dt, $J = 13.9, 4.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.51 (dd, $J = 15.4, 3.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.40-3.35 (m, 1H), 3.30-3.21 (m, 2H), 3.24 (s, 3H), 3.02-3.00 (m, 1H), 2.84 (dd, $J = 16.4, 7.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.68-2.66 (m, 1H), 2.33 (dd, $J = 16.4, 6.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.11-2.07 (m, 1H), 2.05-1.95 (m, 1H), 1.80-1.76 (m, 2H), 1.46 (s, 9H). trans isomer: ^1H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.32 (t, $J = 7.3$ Hz, 2H), 7.24-7.21 (m, 1H), 7.18 (d, $J = 7.1$ Hz, 2H), 3.96 (dd, $J = 14.9, 10.0$ Hz, 1H), 3.82-3.77 (m, 1H), 3.56-3.46 (m, 2H), 3.43-3.38 (m, 1H), 3.34 (s, 3H), 3.30 (d, $J = 15.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.20-3.15 (m, 1H), 2.85 (dd, $J = 16.6, 7.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.78 (br t, 1H), 2.26 (dd, $J = 16.6, 6.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.10 (br d, $J = 22.7, 9.3$ Hz, 1H), 1.77-1.73 (m, 1H), 1.62-1.59 (m, 1H), 1.46 (s, 9H).

INTERMEDIATE 67



tert-Butyl[1-(cyclopropylmethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]acetate

The title compounds (both cis and trans) were prepared with cyclopropylmethyl bromide and 6-phenylazepan-2-one using a similar procedure to Intermediate 66. MS 358 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 68(3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)azepan-2-oneStep A. 2-Bromo-N-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)prop-2-en-1-amine

5 Triethylamine (16.0 mL, 114 mmol) was added to a solution of 2,4-dimethoxybenzylamine hydrochloride (11.1 g, 54.5 mmol) and 2,3-dibromopropene (10.9 g, 54.5 mmol) in dichloromethane (200 mL). After 18 h, water was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel
10 chromatography [100% dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/ 5% (10% ammonium hydroxide/ methanol)] gave the title compound (7.85 g).

Step B. Benzyl (1R)-1-{[(2-bromoprop-2-enyl)(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl) amino]carbonyl}but-3-enylcarbamate

15 1-[3-(Dimethylamino)propyl]-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (55 mg, 0.285 mmol) was added to a solution of 2-bromo-N-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)prop-2-en-1-amine (73 mg, 0.256 mmol) and (2R)-2-{[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}pent-4-enoic acid (71 mg, 0.285 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL). After 18 h the mixture was concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/ hexanes → 30% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title
20 compound (77 mg). MS 517 (M+1).

Step C. Benzyl (1R)-1-{[[2-(2,3-difluorophenyl)prop-2-enyl](2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)amino]carbonyl}but-3-enylcarbamate

25 Dichloro[1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene]palladium dichloromethane adduct (0.726 g, 0.889 mmol) was added to a solution of benzyl (1R)-1-{[(2-bromoprop-2-enyl)(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl) amino]carbonyl}but-3-enylcarbamate (9.2 g, 17.8 mmol), 2,3-difluorophenylboronic acid (2.95 g, 18.7 mmol) and sodium carbonate (2M in water; 19.6 mL, 39.1 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (60 mL) and the mixture was heated to 75 °C. After 2 h, the mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and extracted with dichloromethane
30 (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium

sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/hexanes → 55% ethyl acetate/hexanes) gave the title compound (6.8 g). MS 551.2 (M+1).

Step D. Benzyl (3R)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate

[1,3-bis-(2,4,6-Trimethylphenyl)-2-imidazolidinylidene)dichloro(phenylmethylene)-(tricyclohexylphosphine)ruthenium] (Grubbs second generation catalyst) (2.62 g, 3.09 mmol) was added to a solution of benzyl (1R)-1-[[2-(2,3-difluorophenyl)prop-2-enyl](2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)amino]carbonyl}but-3-enylcarbamate (6.8 g, 12.35 mmol) in dichloromethane (1800 mL) and the solution was heated to 40°C. After 48 h, additional catalyst was added (0.52 g, 0.61 mmol) and the reaction continued to heat at 40°C for an additional 48 h. The mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/hexanes → 55% ethyl acetate/hexanes) gave the title compound (3.71 g). MS 523.1 (M+1).

Step E. Benzyl (3R)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate

Trifluoroacetic acid (60 mL) was added to a solution of benzyl (3R)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2,4-dimethoxybenzyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate (3.70 g, 7.08 mmol) in dichloromethane (40 mL). After 18 h, the mixture was concentrated at 25°C, methanol (150 mL) was added, and the precipitate filtered. The filtrate was concentrated, diluted with dichloromethane (100 mL), washed with water (2x), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% ethyl acetate/hexanes → 65% ethyl acetate/hexanes) gave the title compound (1.75 g). MS 373.1 (M+1).

Step F. *tert*-Butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate

10% Palladium on carbon (700 mg) was added to a solution of benzyl (3R)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1H-azepin-3-ylcarbamate (2.6 g, 6.98 mmol) and di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (5.03 g, 23.0 mmol) in toluene (200 mL). The reaction vessel was evacuated and back-filled with nitrogen (3x), then back-filled with hydrogen (1 atm). After 24 h, the mixture was filtered and concentrated. Purification by preparative reverse phase chromatography (DeltaPak C18, 15 µ, 47 mm x 300 mm, 70 mL/min : 80% H₂O/NH₄OAc : 20% CH₃CN to 100% CH₃CN over 60 min) afforded the pure *trans* title compound (1.2 g). MS 341.2 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.07-7.04 (m, 2H), 6.91-6.89 (m, 1H), 6.04 (br s, 1H),

5.93 (d, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.46 (dd, $J = 10.5, 4.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.65-3.59 (m, 1H), 3.21 (dd, $J = 15.1, 7.3$ Hz, 1H), 3.05-3.00 (m, 1H), 2.25-2.20 (m, 1H), 2.17-2.10 (m, 2H), 1.79-1.71 (m, 1H), 1.46 (s, 9H).

5 Step G. (3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)azepan-2-one

Trifluoroacetic acid (4 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate (82 mg, 0.241 mmol) in dichloromethane (4 mL). After 1 h, the solution was concentrated. Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. MS 241.0 (M+1)

Alternatively, Intermediate 68 can be made in the following manner:

Step H. 1-Benzyl 5-methyl *N,N*-bis(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-D-glutamate

15 To a solution of Boc-D-Glu-OBn (50.0 g, 148.2 mmol) in DCM (400 ml) and MeOH (100 ml) was added trimethylsilyldiazomethane (88.9 mL of 2.0 M solution in hexanes, 117.8 mmol) at 0 °C dropwise via an addition funnel. After 60 min the reaction was concentrated. This residue was diluted with CH₃CN (400 mL) and (Boc)₂O (48.5 g, 222.3 mmol) was added followed by DMAP (18.1 g, 14.8 mmol). After 24 h the reaction was concentrated and purified by silica gel chromatography (10% → 60% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) to give the title compound (48.20 g, 72%). MS 252.2 (M+1 – 2Boc).

Step I. Benzyl (2R,5E)-2-[bis(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-6-nitrohex-5-enoate

25 To a -78 °C of 1-benzyl 5-methyl *N,N*-bis(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-D-glutamate (48.2 g, 106.8 mmol) in Et₂O (400 mL), was added DIBAL (133.4 mL of 1.0 M solution in toluene, 133.4 mmol) slowly so as not to let the internal temperature exceed -65 °C. After 15 min, 20 mL more of DIBAL was added. After stirring for additional 20 min, water (300 mL) was added and the reaction was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 30 min. This mixture was further diluted with Et₂O and H₂O, the layers separated and the aqueous phase extracted with more Et₂O.

30 The combined organics extracts were washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium potassium tartrate (2x), brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give benzyl *N,N*-bis(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-5-oxo-D-norvalinate (44.4 g) which was carried directly into the next step. MS 444.1 (M+Na). This material was dissolved in toluene (310 mL) and nitromethane (57.1 mL, 1.05 mol) and 1,1,3,3-tetramethylguanidine (1.3 mL, 10.5 mmol) were

added at 0 °C. After stirring for 30 min the nitroaldol reaction was complete, so methanesulfonyl chloride (12.2 mL, 158 mmol) was added followed triethylamine (22.0 mL, 158 mmol) at 0 °C and the reaction was allowed to warm to RT. After 1 h, 4 mL MsCl and 5.5 mL triethylamine were added. After stirring for an additional 30 min the mixture was diluted with Et₂O and NaHCO₃, the phases separated and the aqueous layer backwashed with another portion of Et₂O. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give a residue that was purified by silica gel chromatography (5% → 50% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) to give the title compound (34.3 g, 70%). MS 487.1 (M+Na).

10 Step J. Benzyl (5S)-N,N-bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-6-nitro-D-norleucinate

A solution of benzyl (2R,5E)-2-[bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-6-nitrohex-5-enoate (34.0 g, 73.2 mmol), 2,3-difluorophenylboronic acid (28.9 g, 183.0 mmol) and water (4.62 mL, 256.2 mmol) in dioxane (240 mL) was degassed with argon for 15 min. To this solution was added sodium bicarbonate (3.08 g, 36.6 mmol), (S)-BINAP (1.28 g, 2.05 mmol) and acetylacetonotobis(ethylene)rhodium(I) (0.472 g, 1.83 mmol). The mixture was stirred at RT for 2 min then heated to 35 °C. After 4 h, 255 mg of (S)-BINAP and 94 mg of acetylacetonotobis(ethylene)rhodium(I) were added. After an additional 2 h the reaction was diluted with DCM/NaHCO₃, the layers separated and the aqueous phase was backwashed with another portion of DCM. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give a residue that was purified by silica gel chromatography (5% → 60% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) to give the title compound (37.0 g, 87%) contaminated with ~5% 5R isomer. MS 379.1 (M+1 – 2Boc).

25 Step K. (5S)-N²,N²-Bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-D-lysine

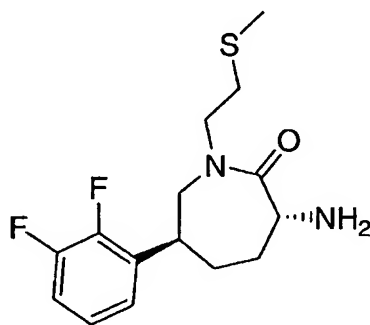
A solution of benzyl (5S)-N,N-bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-6-nitro-D-norleucinate (15.5 g, 26.8 mmol) and 10% Pd/C (12.0 g) in EtOH (175 mL, SureSeal from Aldrich), was hydrogenated at 55 psi overnight. After 18 h, another 4 g of 10% Pd/C was added and the reaction hydrogenated at 55 psi for another 18 h. The reaction was filtered through Celite with more EtOH and concentrated to afford the title compound (12.0 g). MS 459.2 (M+1).

30 Step L. tert-Butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate

To a solution (5S)-N²,N²-bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-D-lysine (22.0 g, 48.0 mmol) in DCM (700 mL) were added EDC (11.0 g, 57.6 mmol) and HOAT (3.27 g, 24.0 mmol) followed by triethylamine (10.0 mL, 72.0 mmol). After 60 min, NaHCO₃ was added,

the layers separated and the aqueous phase backwashed with DCM. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (10% MeOH / DCM) to give the cyclized compound (18.0 g). A portion of this material (2.60 g, 5.90 mmol) was diluted DCM (60 mL) and TFA (1.20 mL, 11.8 mmol) was added. After 1 h, NaHCO₃ was added, the layers separated and the aqueous phase backwashed with DCM. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated and the residue purified by silica gel chromatography (5% → 50% EtOAc / DCM) to give the title compound (1.14 g). MS 341.1 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 69



(3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylthio)ethyl]azepan-2-one

Step A. *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylthio)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate

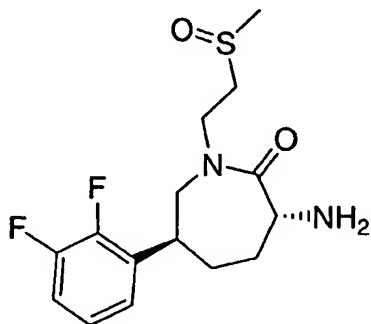
Sodium hydride (60% dispersion in mineral oil; 40 mg, 0.600 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate (170 mg, 0.500 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (4 mL) at 0 °C. After 5 min the mixture was cooled to -30 °C and 1-iodo-2-(methylthio)ethane [prepared according to known procedures: J. Org. Chem., 1987, 52, 2299-2301 (158 mg, 0.782 mmol)] was added. Additional sodium hydride (33 mg, 0.50 mmol) was added and after 4 h excess sodium hydride (33 mg, 0.50 mmol) and 1-iodo-2-(methylthio)ethane (75.6 mg, 0.374 mmol) were added. After 3 h, the final portions of sodium hydride (33 mg, 0.50 mmol) and 1-iodo-2-(methylthio)ethane (75.6 mg, 0.374 mmol) were added and the mixture stirred at -20 °C overnight. The reaction was quenched with water and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water (3x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica

gel chromatography (0% ethyl acetate/ hexanes → 50% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (77 mg). MS 415 (M+1).

Step B. (3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylthio)ethyl]azepan-2-one

- 5 Trifluoroacetic acid (2 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylthio)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate (77 mg, 0.186 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL). After 30 min, the solution was concentrated and azeotroped with toluene (2x). Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated
10 brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. MS 315.2 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 70



(3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfinyl)ethyl]azepan-2-one

- 15 Step A. *tert*-Butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfinyl)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate

- Sodium periodate (11.3 mg, 0.053 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylthio)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate (22 mg, 0.053 mmol) in methanol (2 mL) and water (2 mL). After 30 min excess sodium periodate (22
20 mg, 0.11 mmol) was added. After 18 h, saturated aqueous sodium carbonate was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous sodium carbonate (3x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give the title compound. MS 431 (M+1).

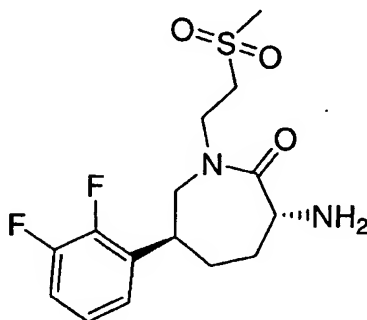
- 25 Step B. (3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfinyl)ethyl]azepan-2-one

Trifluoroacetic acid (1 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfinyl)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate (23 mg, 0.053 mmol) in

dichloromethane (2 mL). After 3 h, the solution was concentrated. Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give the title compound. MS 331 (M+1).

5

INTERMEDIATE 71



(3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfonyl)ethyl]azepan-2-one

Step A. *tert*-Butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfonyl)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate

10

Oxone[®] (16.1 mg, 0.11 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylthio)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate (22 mg, 0.053 mmol) in methanol (2 mL) and water (2 mL). After 6 h excess oxone (32 mg, 0.22 mmol) was added. After 18 h, the reaction was quenched with aqueous sodium sulfite solution and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous sodium carbonate (3x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give the title compound. MS 447 (M+1).

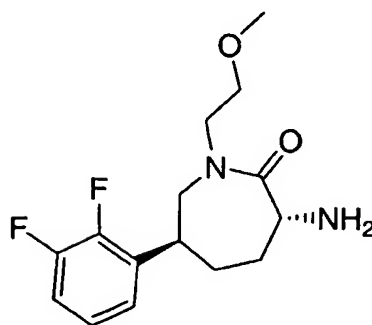
15

Step B. (3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfonyl)ethyl]azepan-2-one

20

Trifluoroacetic acid (1 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfonyl)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate (23.7 mg, 0.053 mmol) in dichloromethane (2 mL). After 4 h, the solution was concentrated. Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give the title compound. MS 347 (M+1).

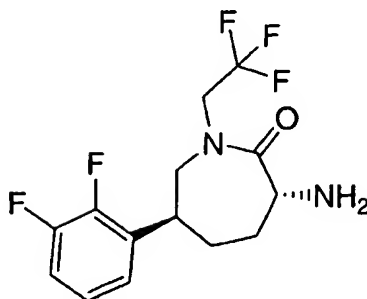
25

INTERMEDIATE 72(3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)azepan-2-oneStep A. *tert*-Butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxazepan-3-ylcarbamate

Sodium hydride (60% dispersion in mineral oil; 17.6 mg, 0.264 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxazepan-3-ylcarbamate (75 mg, 0.220 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethyl formamide (2 mL) at 0 °C . After 5 min, 2-bromoethyl methyl ether (0.025 mL, 0.264 mmol) was added and the mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 3 h, the reaction was quenched with water and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water (2x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give the title compound. MS 421 (M+Na).

Step B. (3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)azepan-2-one

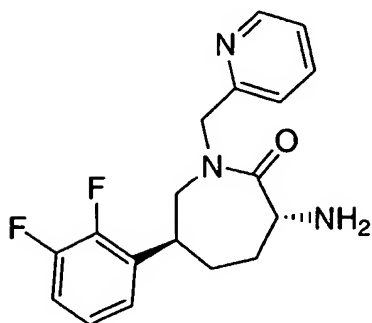
Trifluoroacetic acid (2.5 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxazepan-3-ylcarbamate (99 mg, 0.248 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL). After 1 h, the solution was concentrated and azeotroped with toluene (2x). Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. MS 299.2 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 73(3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-2-oneStep A: *tert*-Butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-3-ylcarbamate

Sodium hydride (60% dispersion in mineral oil; 70.7 mg, 1.06 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate (301 mg, 0.884 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (7 mL) at -35 °C. After 15 min, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl trichloromethanesulfonate (0.314 mL, 1.91 mmol) was added and the reaction was stirred at -35 °C. After 30 min, an additional amount of sodium hydride (27 mg, 0.40 mmol) and 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl trichloromethanesulfonate (0.140 mL, 0.85 mmol) were added. After 2 h, the reaction was quenched with water and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water (3x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (0% ethyl acetate/ hexanes → 30% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (306 mg). MS 423 (M+1).

Step B: (3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-2-one

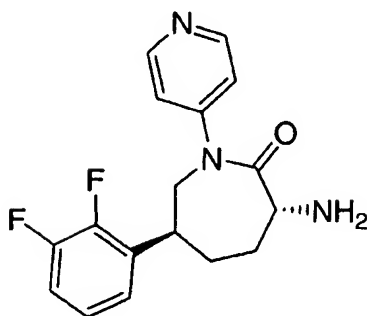
Trifluoroacetic acid (2.5 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-3-ylcarbamate (135 mg, 0.320 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL). After 30 min, the solution was concentrated and azeotroped with toluene (2x). Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. MS 323.1 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.11-7.03 (m, 2H), 6.93-6.89 (m, 1H), 4.21-4.13 (m, 1H), 4.10-3.98 (m, 2H), 3.85 (d, *J* = 11.0 Hz, 1H), 3.35 (d, *J* = 15.4 Hz, 1H), 3.04-2.99 (m, 1H), 2.13-2.09 (m, 2H), 2.08-2.02 (m, 1H), 1.78-1.70 (m, 3H).

INTERMEDIATE 74(3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(pyridin-2-ylmethyl)azepan-2-oneStep A. *tert*-Butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(pyridin-2-ylmethyl)azepan-3-ylcarbamate

Sodium hydride (60% dispersion in mineral oil; 30 mg, 1.175 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate (160 mg, 0.470 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (6 mL) at 0 °C. After 30 min, 2-bromomethyl pyridine (0.125 mg, 0.494 mmol) was added. After 1 h, the reaction was quenched with water and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water (2x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give the title compound (202 mg). MS 432.2 (M+1).

Step B. (3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(pyridin-2-ylmethyl)azepan-2-one

Trifluoroacetic acid (3 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(pyridin-2-ylmethyl)azepan-3-ylcarbamate (202 mg, 0.468 mmol) in dichloromethane (4 mL). After 18 h, the solution was concentrated. Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. MS 332.2 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 75(3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-pyridin-4-ylazepan-2-oneStep A. *tert*-Butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-pyridin-4-ylazepan-3-ylcarbamate

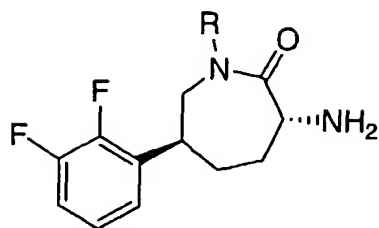
5 4-Bromopyridine (286 mg, 1.47 mmol) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-ylcarbamate (200 mg, 0.588 mmol), 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (20 mg, 0.035 mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (22 mg, 0.024 mmol), and cesium carbonate (268 mg, 0.823 mmol) in dioxane (6 mL) and the mixture was heated at 150 °C in a Personal Chemistry
10 Smith Creator™ microwave reactor. After 30 min, an additional amount of 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (20 mg, 0.035 mmol) and tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (22 mg, 0.024 mmol) were added. After 30 min, the mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with water (2x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give the
15 title compound (55 mg). MS 418.2 (M+1).

Step B. (3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-pyridin-4-ylazepan-2-one

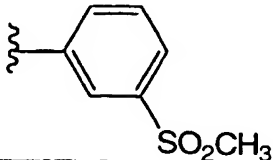
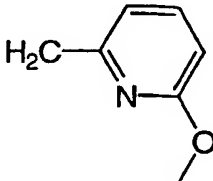
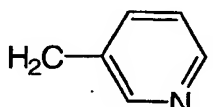
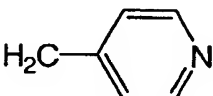
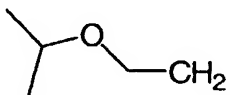

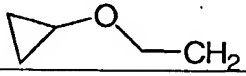
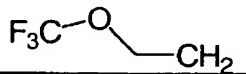
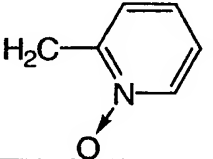
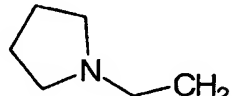
Trifluoroacetic acid (2 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl (3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-pyridin-4-ylazepan-3-ylcarbamate (55 mg, 0.132 mmol) in
20 dichloromethane (2 mL). After 1 h, the solution was concentrated. Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. MS 318.2 (M+1).

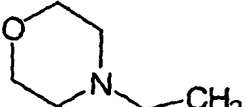
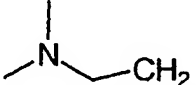
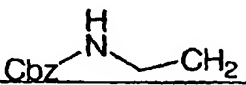
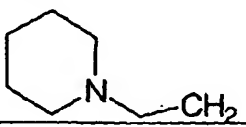
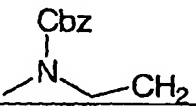
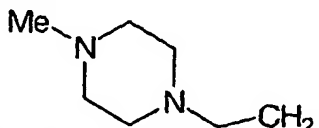
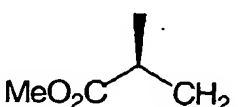
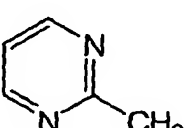
25 Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Intermediates 69-75, the Intermediates in Table I-4 were prepared.

TABLE I-4

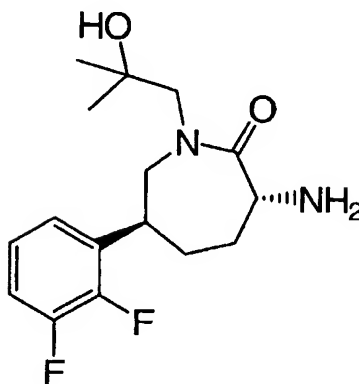


Intermediate	R	MS (M+1)
76	CH ₃	255.2
77	CH ₂ CH ₃	269.2
78		295.2
79	CH ₂ CH ₂ F	287
80	CH ₂ CHF ₂	305.1
81		325.2
82		325.2
83	CH ₂ CO ₂ CH ₃	313.1
84		317.2
85		318.1
86		395.1

87		395.1
88		362.2
89		332
90		332
91		327
92		313
93		325
94		353
95		348
96		338

97		354
98		312
99	$\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	341
100		418.2
101		352
102		432
103		367
104	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CF}_3$	337
105		341
106		333

5

INTERMEDIATE 107

(3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)azepan-2-one

10 Step A. Di-*tert*-butyl [(3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]imidodicarbonate

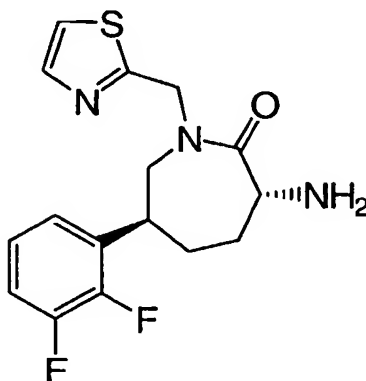
A solution of (5S)-*N*²,*N*²-bis(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-D-lysine (0.569 g, 1.24 mmol), 1-chloro-2-methyl-2-propanol (0.202 g, 1.86 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (0.529 g, 4.10 mmol) in EtOH (5 mL) was heated at 75 °C overnight. The reaction was concentrated to dryness, diluted with DCM (20 mL) and EDC (0.358 g, 1.87 mmol), HOAT (0.252 g, 1.87 mmol) were added followed by diisopropylethylamine (0.650 mL, 3.73 mmol). After stirring overnight, NaHCO₃ was added, the layers separated and the aqueous phase backwashed with DCM. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, concentrated and the residue purified by silica gel chromatography (10% → 35% EtOAc / hexanes) to give the title compound (0.21 g). MS 513.1 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 7.1 (m, 3H), 5.24 (d, *J* = 10.7 Hz, 1H), 4.02 (m, 1H), 3.69 (d, *J* = 13.9 Hz, 1H), 3.60 (d, *J* = 15.1 Hz, 1H), 3.39 (m, 1H), 3.24 (d, *J* = 14.2 Hz, 1H), 2.4 (m, 1H), 2.1 (m, 3H), 1.5 (s, 18H), 1.20 (s, 3H), 1.16 (s, 3H).

25 Step B. (3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)azepan-2-one

A solution of di-*tert*-butyl [(3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]imidodicarbonate (0.095 g, 0.185 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) was

treated with trifluoroacetic acid (3 mL). After 1h the reaction was concentrated to dryness to afford the title compound as a TFA salt. MS 313.2 (M+1).

INTERMEDIATE 108



(3R,6S)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-ylmethyl)azepan-2-one

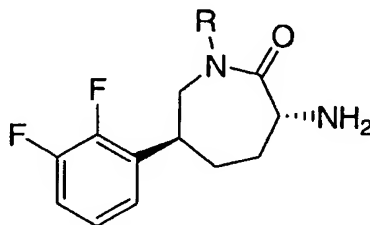
Step A. Di-tert-butyl [(3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-ylmethyl)azepan-3-yl]imidodicarbonate

A solution of (5S)-N²,N²-bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-D-lysine (0.871 g, 1.90 mmol), 2-formylthiazole (0.183 g, 1.62 mmol) and acetic acid (0.137 g, 2.28 mmol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (20 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 30 min. Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (0.604 g, 2.85 mmol) was added and the reaction stirred overnight. The reaction was diluted with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, the layers separated, and the aqueous phase extracted with DCM (2x). The organic washes were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated. This residue was diluted with dichloromethane (20 mL) and EDC (0.569 g, 2.97 mmol), HOAT (0.401 g, 2.97 mmol) were added followed by diisopropylethylamine (1.04 mL, 5.94 mmol). After stirring overnight, NaHCO₃ was added, the layers separated and the aqueous phase backwashed with DCM. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, concentrated and the residue purified by silica gel chromatography (0% → 40% EtOAc / hexanes) to give the title compound (0.49 g). MS 538.0 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.73 (d, J = 3.5 Hz, 1H), 7.37 (d, J = 3.4 Hz, 1H), 7.0 (m, 2H), 6.8 (m, 1H), 5.20 (d, J = 10.3 Hz, 1H), 5.03 (d, J = 15.5 Hz, 1H), 4.96 (d, J = 15.5 Hz, 1H), 3.84 (dd, J = 10.3, 15.2 Hz, 1H), 3.48 (d, J = 15.5 Hz, 1H), 2.94 (dd, J = 11.0, 11.0 Hz, 1H), 2.50 (dd, 1H), 2.0 (m, 4H), 1.5 (s, 18H).

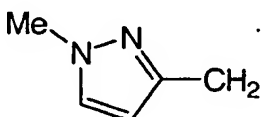
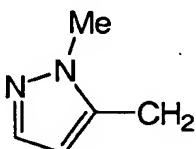
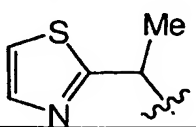
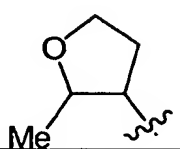
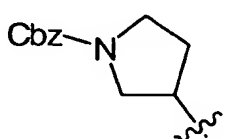
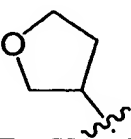
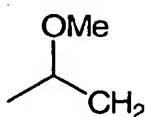
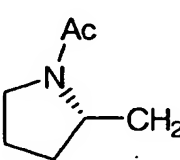
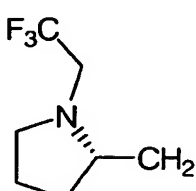
Step B. (3*R*,6*S*)-3-Amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-ylmethyl)azepan-2-one

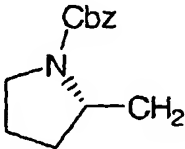
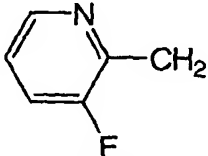
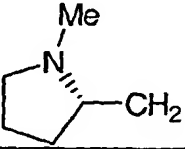
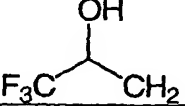
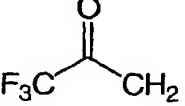
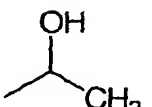
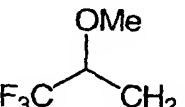
A solution of di-*tert*-butyl [(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-ylmethyl)azepan-3-yl]imidodicarbonate (0.481 g, 0.895 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) was treated with trifluoroacetic acid (3 mL). After 1h the reaction was diluted with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate, the layers separated, and the aqueous phase extracted with DCM (2x). The organic washes were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated to afford the title compound (0.30 mg). MS 338.2 (M+1).

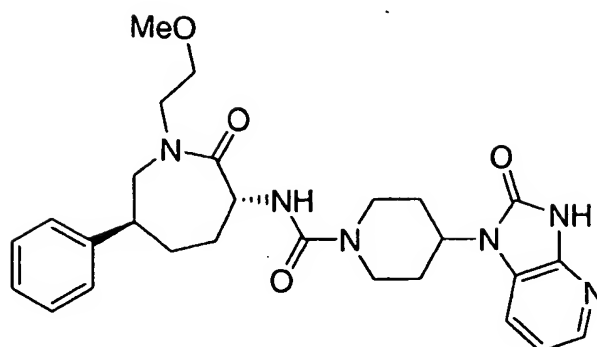
Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Intermediates 107-108, the Intermediates in Table I-5 were prepared.

TABLE I-5

Intermediate	R	MS (M+1)
109	CH(CH ₃) ₂	283.2
110	CH ₂ CH ₂ OH	285.2
111		322.2
112		335.2

113	 <chem>Cc1nnc(C)cc1</chem>	335.2
114	 <chem>Cc1nnc(C)cc1</chem>	335.2
115	 <chem>Cc1ncc(S)c1</chem>	352.2
116	 <chem>C[C@H]1OCCO1</chem>	325
117	 <chem>COC(=O)N1CCCC1</chem>	444
118	 <chem>C1OCCO1</chem>	311
119	 <chem>COC(C)C</chem>	313.2
120	 <chem>CC(=O)N1CCCC1</chem>	366
121	 <chem>FC(F)(F)CN1CCCC1</chem>	406

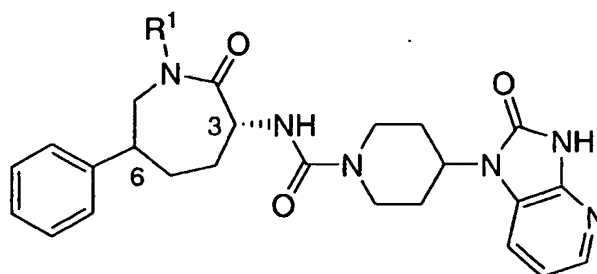
122		458
123		350
124		338
125		353.2
126		369.1 (M+H ₂ O)
127		299.2
128		367.2


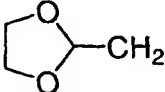

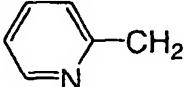
EXAMPLE 1

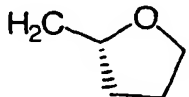
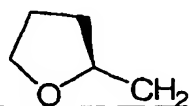
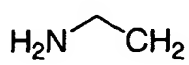
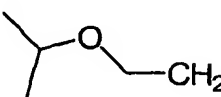
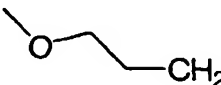
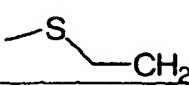
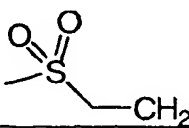
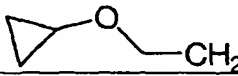
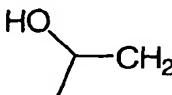
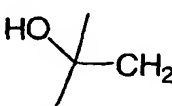
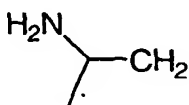
5 *N*-[1-(2-Methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

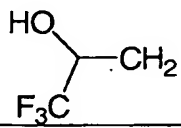
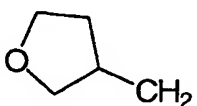
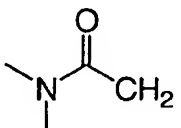
Triethylamine (0.015 mL, 0.107 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-6-phenylazepan-2-one (28 mg, 0.107 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (22 mg, 0.107 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2 mL) at 0 °C. After 30 min, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidiny)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride (37 mg, 0.128 mmol), diisopropylethylamine (0.074 mL, 0.427 mmol) and dichloromethane (2.5 mL) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 18 h, saturated aqueous sodium carbonate was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous sodium carbonate (3x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (100% dichloromethane → 93% dichloromethane/ methanol) gave the title compound (45 mg). MS 507.2737 (M+1).

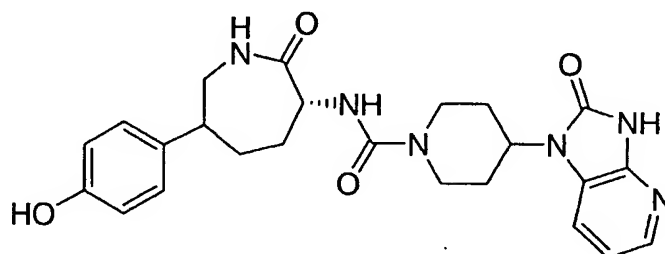
Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Example 1, the Examples in Table E-1 were prepared.

TABLE E-1

Examples	C-3	C-6	R ¹	MS (M+1)
2	R	S	H	449
3	R	R	H	449
4	R	S	CH ₃	463
5	R	S	CH ₂ CH ₃	477
6	R	S	CH ₂ CF ₃	531.2326
7	R	S	CH ₂ CO ₂ CH ₃	521.2481
8	R	S	CH ₂ CO ₂ H	507.2353
9	R	S	(CH ₂) ₂ OCH ₂ CH ₃	521.2910
10	R	S	CH ₂ CN	488.2378
11	R	S	(CH ₂) ₂ OH	493.2555
12	R	S	 -CH ₂	503
13	R	S	 -CH ₂	535.2666
14	R	S	CH ₂ CH ₂ F	495.2489
15	R	S	CH ₂ CHF ₂	513.2401
16	R	S	CH ₂ CHCF ₂	525.2392
17	R	S	 -CH ₂	539.2747
18	R	S	 -CH ₂	540.2715

19	R	S		533.2858
20	R	S		533.2858
21	R	S		492.2712
22	R	S		535.3008
23	R	S		521.2856
24	R	S		523.2440
25	R	S		555.2379
26	R	S	$(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{OCF}_3$	561
27	R	S		533.2850
28	R	S		507.2703
29	R	S		521.2867
30	R	S		506.2395

31	R	S		561.2395
32	R	S		533.2821
33	R	S	Ph	525.2569
34	R	S		534.2791

EXAMPLE 35

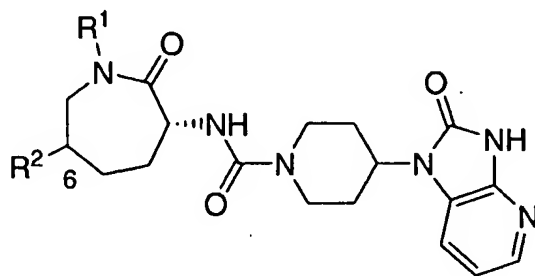
N-[(3R)-6-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Triethylamine (0.009 mL, 0.091 mmol) was added to a solution of (3R)-3-amino-6-(4-hydroxyphenyl)azepan-2-one (10 mg, 0.045 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (18 mg, 0.091 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (0.2 mL) and tetrahydrofuran (0.2 mL) at 0 °C. After 1 h, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride (26 mg, 0.091 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (0.032 mL, 0.182 mmol) were added and the mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 18 h, the mixture was purified by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 95% water/ acetonitrile → 5% water/ acetonitrile with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) to give the title compound (7 mg). MS 465.2243 (M+1).

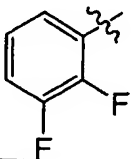
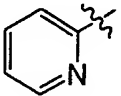
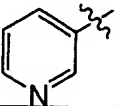
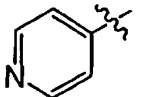
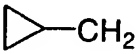
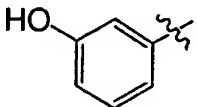
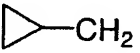
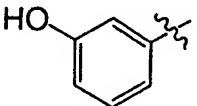
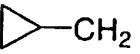
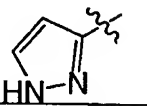
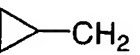
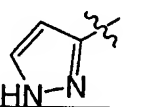
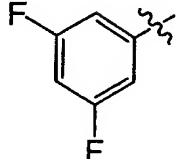
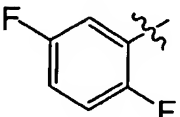
Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Examples 1-35, the Examples in Table E-2 were prepared.

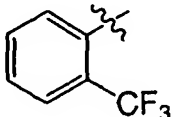
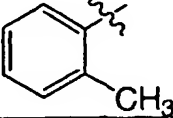
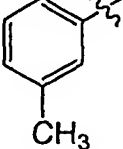
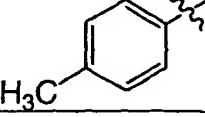
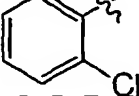
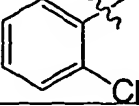
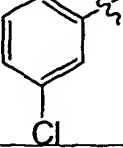

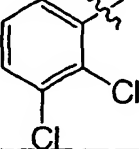
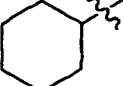
TABLE E-2

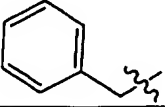
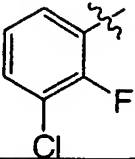
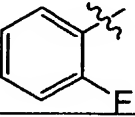
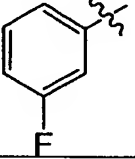
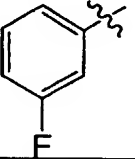
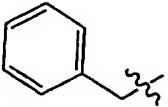
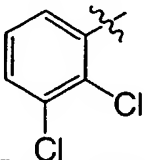
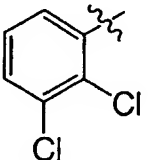
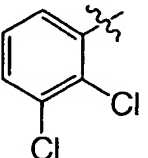
5

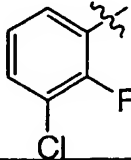
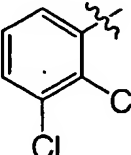


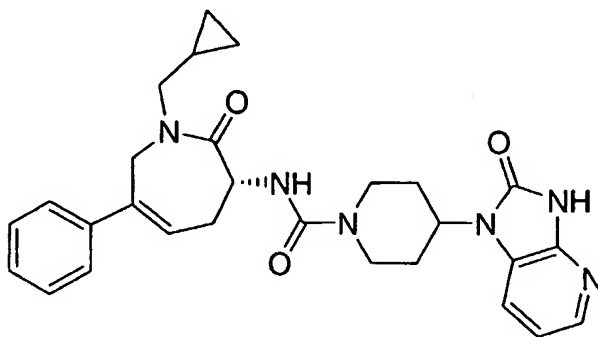
Examples	C-6	R ¹	R ²	MS (M+1)
36	R or S	H		467.2189
37	S	H		467.2200
38	R or S	H		467.2201
39	R or S	H		467.2203
40	R or S	H		485.2076

41	R	H		485.2090
42	R or S	H		450
43	R or S	H		450.2241
44	R or S	H		450.2262
45	R or S			519
46	S			519
47	S			493
48	R			493
49	R or S	H		485.2123
50	R or S	H		485.2118

51	R or S	H	 <chem>CC(C)(c1ccccc1)C(F)(F)F</chem>	517.2165
52	R or S	H	 <chem>CC(C)(c1ccccc1)C</chem>	463.2428
53	R or S	H	 <chem>CC(C)Cc1ccc(C)cc1</chem>	463.2431
54	R or S	H	 <chem>CC(C)Cc1cccc(C)c1</chem>	463.2434
55	R or S	H	 <chem>CC(C)(c1ccccc1)Cl</chem>	483.1894
56	S	H	 <chem>CC(C)(c1ccccc1)Cl</chem>	483.1907
57	R or S	H	 <chem>CC(C)Cc1ccc(Cl)cc1</chem>	483.1907
58	R or S	H	 <chem>CC(C)(C)(c1ccccc1)C</chem>	415.2457
59	R or S	H	 <chem>CC(Cl)(Cl)(c1ccccc1)C</chem>	517.1516
60	R or S	H	 <chem>CC1CCCCC1</chem>	455.2774

61	R or S	H		463.2480
62	R or S	H		501.1808
63	S	Et		495.2532
64	S	CH ₂ CH ₂ F		513.2418
65	S	CH ₂ CH ₂ OMe		525.2629
66	R or S	Et		491.2777
67	R or S	Me		531.2
68	S	Me		531.2
69	S	Et		545.2

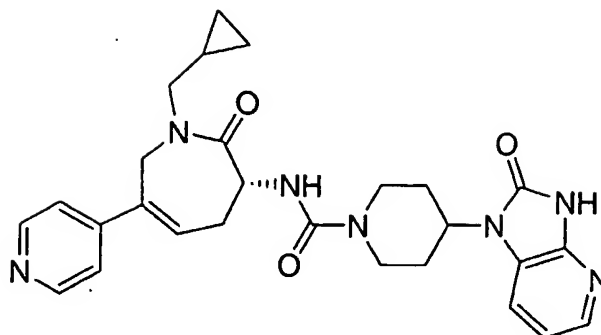
70	R or S	Et		529.2123
71	R or S	CH ₂ CF ₃		599.1538

EXAMPLE 72

N-[(3*R*)-1-(Cyclopropylmethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenyl-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

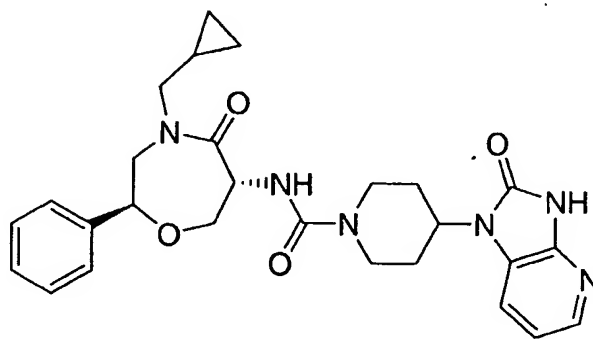
The title compound was prepared using similar procedures to Examples 1-35. MS

501 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 73

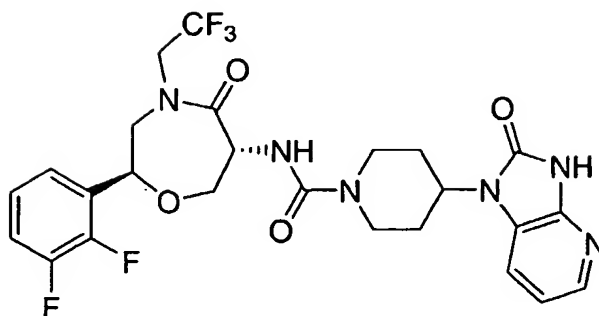
5 *N*-[(3*R*)-1-(Cyclopropylmethyl)-2-oxo-6-pyridin-4-yl-2,3,4,7-tetrahydro-1*H*-azepin-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared using similar procedures to Examples 1-35. MS 502 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 74

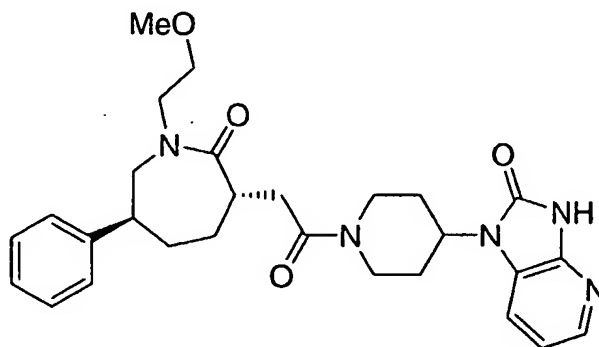
10 *N*-[(2*S*,6*R*)-4-(Cyclopropylmethyl)-5-oxo-2-phenyl-1,4-oxazepan-6-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

15 Triethylamine (0.015 mL, 0.109 mmol) was added to a solution of (2*S*,6*R*)-6-amino-4-(cyclopropylmethyl)-2-phenyl-1,4-oxazepan-5-one (27 mg, 0.104 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (22 mg, 0.109 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2 mL) at 0 °C. After 0.5 h, diisopropylethylamine (0.072 mL, 0.415 mmol), 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (36 mg, 0.124 mmol), and dichloromethane (2.5 mL)
20 were added and the mixture warmed to ambient temperature. After 18 h, the mixture was concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (100% dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/ methanol) gave the title compound (45 mg). MS 505.2559 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 75

N-[(2*S*,6*R*)-2-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-5-oxo-4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-oxazepan-6-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared with using a similar procedure to Example 74. MS 569.1943 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 76

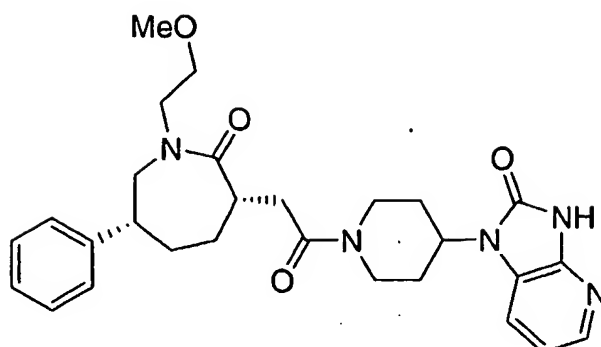
trans-1-(1-([1-(2-Methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]acetyl)piperidin-4-yl)-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-4-ium trifluoroacetate

Step A. *Trans*-[1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]acetic acid

Trifluoroacetic acid (1 mL) was added to a solution (*trans*)-*tert*-butyl[1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]acetate (170 mg, 0.47 mmol) in dichloromethane (3 mL). After 2 h, the solution was concentrated. MS 306 (M+1).

Step B. *trans*-1-(1-([1-(2-Methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]acetyl)piperidin-4-yl)-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-4-ium trifluoroacetate

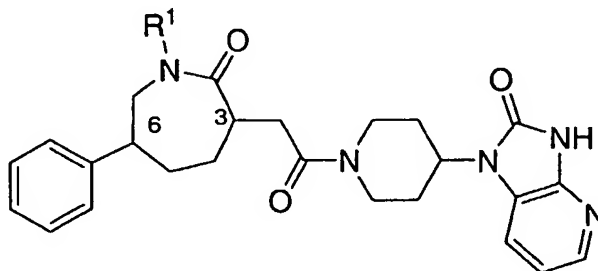
Triethylamine (0.33 mL, 2.35 mmol) was added to a solution of *trans*-[1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]acetic acid (143.6 mg, 0.47 mmol), 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride (136 mg, 0.47 mmol), 1-[3-(dimethylamino)propyl]-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (180 mg, 0.941 mmol), and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (72 mg, 0.47 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (4 mL). After 18 h, the reaction was concentrated. Purification by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 95%
5 water/acetonitrile → 5% water/acetonitrile with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) gave the title
10 compound (187 mg). MS 506 (M+1).

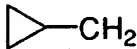
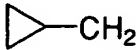
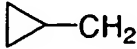
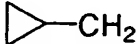
EXAMPLE 77

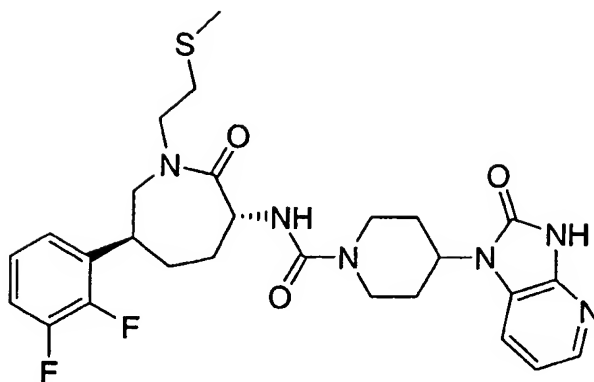
5 *cis*-1-(1-([1-(2-Methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]acetyl)piperidin-4-yl)-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-4-ium trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared with (*cis*)-*tert*-butyl[1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxo-6-phenylazepan-3-yl]acetate using a similar procedure to Example 76. MS 506 (M+1).

10 Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Example 76, the Examples in Table E-3 were prepared.

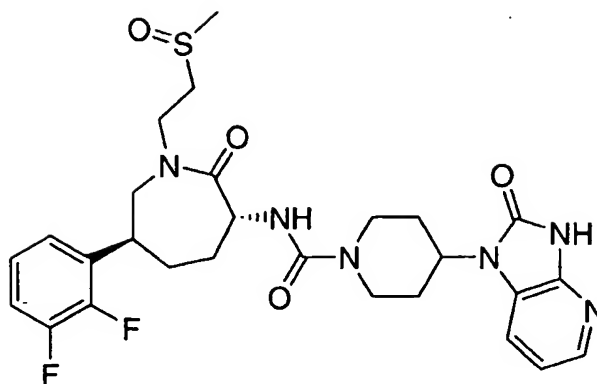
TABLE E-3

Examples	C-3	C-6	R ¹	MS (M+1)
78	R	S	 CH ₂	502.2813
79	S	R	 CH ₂	502
80	R	R	 CH ₂	502
81	S	S	 CH ₂	502

EXAMPLE 82

5 *N*-{(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylthio)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-yl}-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Triethylamine (0.020 mL, 0.143 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylthio)ethyl]azepan-2-one (45 mg, 0.143 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (29 mg, 0.143 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (3 mL) at 0 °C. After 15 min,
 10 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (46 mg, 0.157 mmol), triethylamine (0.080 mL, 0.572 mmol) and dichloromethane (5 mL) were added and the mixture was heated to 50 °C. After 30 min, the mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography [100% dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/ methanol (10% ammonium hydroxide/ methanol)] gave the title
 15 compound (60 mg). The title compound was converted to the HCl salt with 2*M* HCl in ether. MS 559.2 (*M*+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.11 (dd, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1.0 Hz, 1*H*), 7.99 (dd, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1.0 Hz, 1*H*), 7.38-7.35 (m, 1*H*), 7.18-7.14 (m, 3*H*), 4.76 (d, *J* = 10.7 Hz, 1*H*), 4.61-4.54 (m, 1*H*), 4.31-4.26 (m, 2*H*), 4.15-4.09 (m, 1*H*), 3.85-3.80 (m, 1*H*), 3.67-3.58 (m, 1*H*), 3.37 (d, *J* = 15.4 Hz, 1*H*), 3.20-3.16 (m, 1*H*), 3.08-2.96 (m, 2*H*), 2.75-2.70 (m, 2*H*), 2.49-2.41 (m,
 20 1*H*), 2.34-2.26 (m, 1*H*), 2.21-2.16 (m, 1*H*), 2.14 (s, 3*H*), 2.11-2.07 (m, 2*H*), 1.90-1.85 (m, 3*H*).

EXAMPLE 83

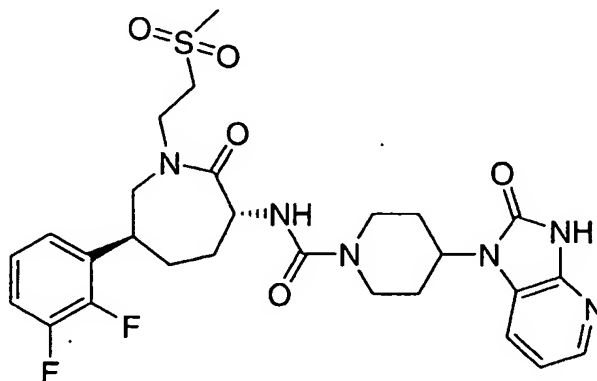
5 *N*-{[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfinyl)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]}-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Triethylamine (0.010 mL, 0.027 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfinyl)ethyl]azepan-2-one (8.9 mg, 0.027 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (5.4 mg, 0.027 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (0.700 mL) at 0 °C.

10 After 45 min, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (7.9 mg, 0.027 mmol) and triethylamine (0.040 mL, 0.108 mmol) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 16 h, the mixture was concentrated.

Purification by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 95% water/acetonitrile → 5% water/acetonitrile with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) gave the title compound. MS 575 (M+1).

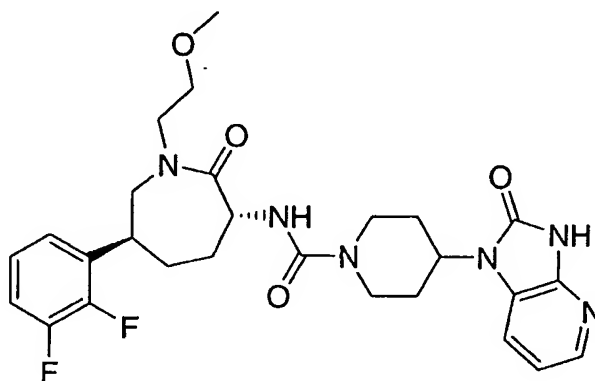
15

EXAMPLE 84

N-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfonyl)ethyl]-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Triethylamine (0.010 mL, 0.023 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-[2-(methylsulfonyl)ethyl]azepan-2-one (8 mg, 0.023 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (4.6 mg, 0.023 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (0.700 mL) at 0 °C. After 15 min, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidiny)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (6.7 mg, 0.023 mmol) and triethylamine (0.040 mL, 0.092 mmol) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 16 h, the mixture was concentrated. Purification by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 95% water/acetonitrile → 5% water/acetonitrile with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) gave the title compound. MS 591 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 85

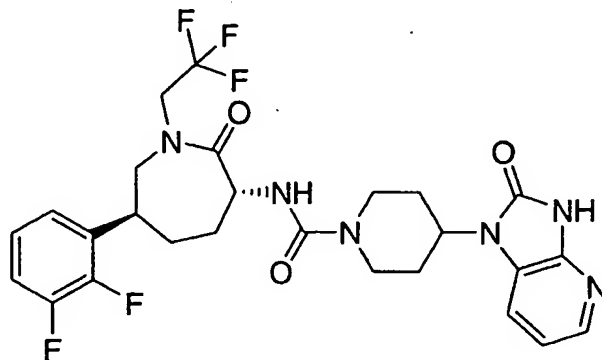


N-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Triethylamine (0.030 mL, 0.218 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)azepan-2-one (65 mg, 0.218 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (44 mg, 0.218 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (3 mL) at 0 °C. After 30 min, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidiny)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (70 mg, 0.240 mmol), triethylamine (0.120 mL, 0.872 mmol), and dichloromethane (5 mL) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 4.5 h, the mixture was concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography [100% dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/methanol (10% ammonium hydroxide/ methanol)] gave the title compound (88 mg). The title compound was converted to the HCl salt with 2M HCl in ether. MS 543.3 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.09 (dd, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 7.99 (dd, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1.0 Hz, 1H),

7.36(m, 1H), 7.17-7.10 (m, 3H), 4.78 (d, $J = 11.0$ Hz, 1H), 4.61-4.54 (m, 1H), 4.31-4.24 (m, 2H), 4.18-4.13 (m, 1H), 3.94-3.89 (m, 1H), 3.57-3.53 (m, 2H), 3.48-3.43 (m, 1H), 3.39 (d, $J = 15.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.34 (s, 3H), 3.19-3.15 (m, 1H), 3.07-2.96 (m, 2H), 2.49-2.41 (m, 1H), 2.35-2.26 (m, 1H), 2.19-2.06 (m, 3H), 1.90-1.76 (m, 3H).

5

EXAMPLE 86

10 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

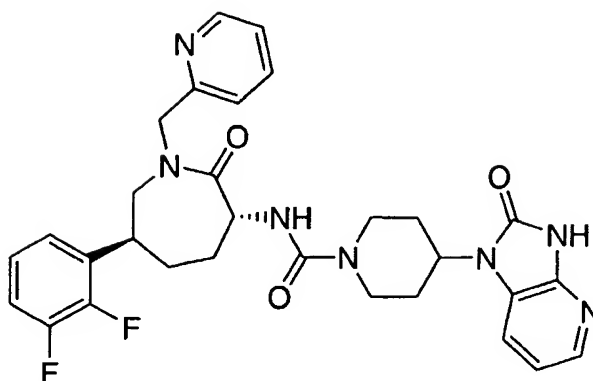
Triethylamine (0.038 mL, 0.276 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-2-one (89 mg, 0.276 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (56 mg, 0.276 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (3 mL) at 0 °C. After 30 min,

15 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (88 mg, 0.304 mmol), triethylamine (0.152 mL, 1.104 mmol), and dichloromethane (5 mL) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 48 h, the mixture was concentrated.

Purification by silica gel chromatography [100% dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/methanol (10% ammonium hydroxide/ methanol)] gave the title compound (98 mg). The title

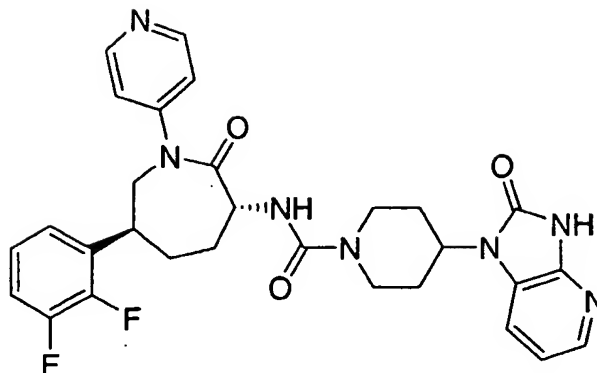
20 compound was converted to the HCl salt with 2M HCl in ether. MS 567.2 ($M+1$). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.11 (dd, $J = 7.8$ Hz, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 8.00 (dd, $J = 5.9$ Hz, 1.0 Hz, 1H), 7.34-7.31 (m, 1H), 7.19-7.13 (m, 3H), 4.86-4.83 (m, 1H), 4.62-4.57 (m, 1H), 4.49-4.41 (m, 1H), 4.33-4.25 (m, 3H), 4.12-4.04 (m, 1H), 3.51-3.46 (m, 1H), 3.18-3.14 (m, 1H), 3.09-2.96 (m, 2H), 2.51-2.44 (m, 1H), 2.33-2.25 (m, 1H), 2.22-2.10 (m, 3H), 1.90-1.81 (m, 3H).

25

EXAMPLE 87

N-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(pyridin-2-ylmethyl)azepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Triethylamine (0.065 mL, 0.468 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(pyridin-2-ylmethyl)azepan-2-one (180 mg, 0.417 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (94 mg, 0.468 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (3 mL) at 0 °C. After 1 h, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (136 mg, 0.468 mmol) and triethylamine (0.195 mL, 1.404 mmol) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 18 h, the mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with water (2x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography [100% dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/ methanol (10% ammonium hydroxide/ methanol)] gave the title compound (240 mg). The title compound was converted to the HCl salt with 2*M* HCl in ether. MS 576.3 (*M*+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.78 (d, *J* = 5.9 Hz, 1*H*), 8.62-8.59 (m, 1*H*), 8.07 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1*H*), 8.03-7.98 (m, 3*H*), 7.32 (dd, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 6.1, 1*H*), 7.18-7.15 (m, 3*H*), 5.43 (d, *J* = 16.9 Hz, 1*H*), 4.75 (d, *J* = 17.1 Hz, 1*H*), 4.56-4.51 (m, 1*H*), 4.36-4.28 (m, 3*H*), 3.51 (d, *J* = 15.1 Hz, 1*H*), 3.48 (s, 1*H*), 3.22-3.17 (m, 1*H*), 3.05-2.98 (m, 2*H*), 2.44-2.40 (m, 1*H*), 2.34-2.23 (m, 2*H*), 2.18-2.14 (m, 2*H*), 1.97-1.92 (m, 1*H*), 1.89-1.88 (m, 2*H*).

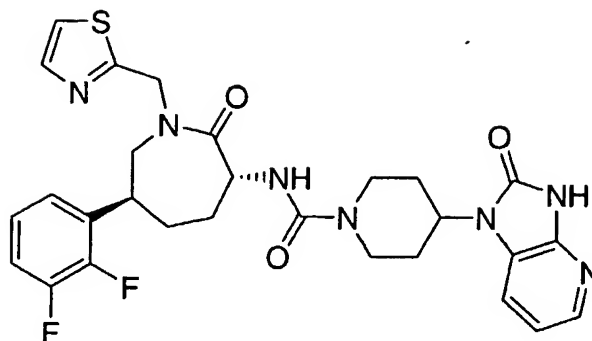
EXAMPLE 88

N-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-pyridin-4-ylazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Triethylamine (0.018 mL, 0.132 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-pyridin-4-ylazepan-2-one (42 mg, 0.132 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (27 mg, 0.132 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2 mL) at 0 °C. After 1 h, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (38 mg, 0.132 mmol) and triethylamine (0.054 mL, 0.396 mmol) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 18 h, the mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with water (2x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography [100% dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/ methanol (10% ammonium hydroxide/ methanol)] gave the title compound (53 mg). The title compound was converted to the HCl salt with 2M HCl in ether.

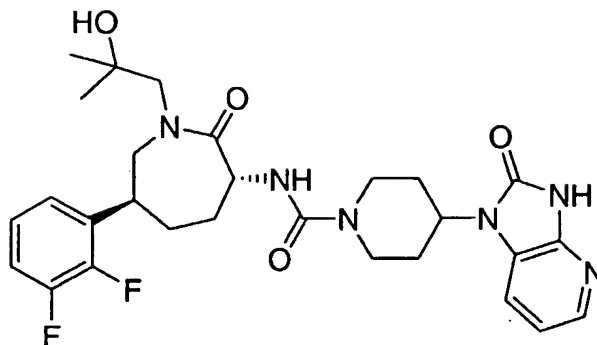
MS 562.2 (*M*+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.76 (d, *J* = 7.6 Hz, 2H), 8.11 (d, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 2H), 8.00 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 2H), 7.30 (t, *J* = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 7.27-7.21 (m, 3H), 5.11 (d, *J* = 11.5 Hz, 1H), 4.72-4.65 (m, 1H), 4.60-4.55 (m, 1H), 4.35-4.33 (m, 2H), 4.14 (d, *J* = 16.1 Hz, 1H), 3.42-3.39 (m, 1H), 3.09-3.02 (m, 2H), 2.47-2.44 (m, 1H), 2.37-2.30 (m, 2H), 2.24-2.18 (m, 2H), 2.06-2.03 (m, 1H), 1.91 (br. s, 2H).

EXAMPLE 89



5 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-ylmethyl)azepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-
dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide Triethylamine (0.156 mL,
 0.112 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(1,3-thiazol-
 2-ylmethyl)azepan-2-one (302 mg, 0.895 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (217 mg, 1.074
 10 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (15 mL) at 0 °C. After 30 min, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidiny)-2,3-dihydro-
 1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (782 mg, 2.685 mmol), triethylamine (5.37 mmol)
 and dichloromethane (15 mL) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient
 temperature. The reaction was stirred overnight, concentrated, diluted with saturated aqueous
 sodium bicarbonate and extracted with dichloromethane (2x). The organic layer was washed
 15 with water, saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification
 by silica gel chromatography (0% → 8% methanol / dichloromethane) gave the title compound
 (400 mg). MS 582.2109 (*M*+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.06 (d, *J* = 4.5 Hz, 1H), 7.73 (d,
J = 3.4 Hz, 1H), 7.35 (m, 2H), 7.0 (m, 2H), 6.98 (dd, *J* = 5.4, 7.8 Hz, 1H), 6.85 (m, 1H), 6.21 (d,
J = 5.3 Hz, 1H), 5.0 (app q, *J* = 15 Hz, 2H), 4.85 (dd, *J* = 5.0, 11.1 Hz, 1H), 4.58 (m, 1H), 4.27
 20 (br dd, 2H), 4.00 (dd, *J* = 10.6, 15.1 Hz, 1H), 3.50 (d, *J* = 15.1 Hz, 1H), 3.0 (br dd, 1h), 2.88 (dd,
J = 10.0, 10.0 Hz, 1H), 2.2-1.6 (m, 8H).

EXAMPLE 90

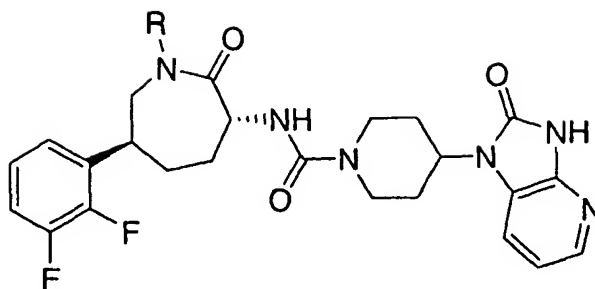


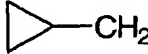
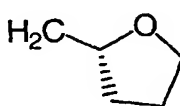
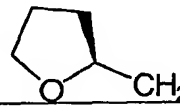
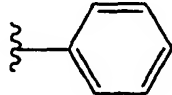
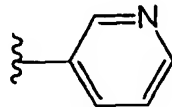
N-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

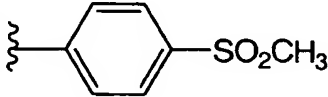
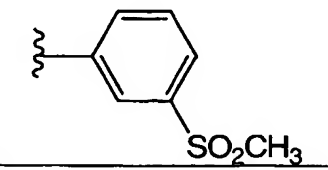
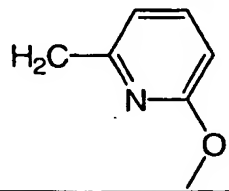
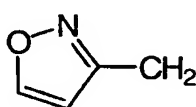
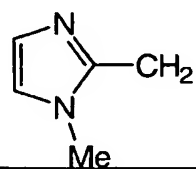
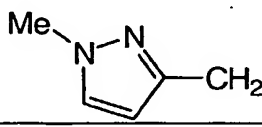
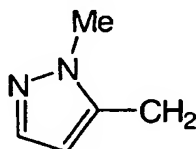
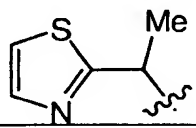
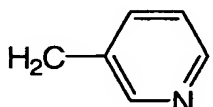
Triethylamine (0.054 mL, 0.389 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)azepan-2-one (54 mg, 0.173 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (40 mg, 0.199 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (15 mL) at 0 °C. After 30 min, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (151 mg, 0.519 mmol), triethylamine (1.04 mmol) and chloroform (15 mL) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. The reaction was then heated to 50°C for 2 h, concentrated, diluted with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and extracted with dichloromethane (2x). The organic layer was washed with water, saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (1.5% → 11% methanol / dichloromethane) gave the title compound (70 mg). MS 557.2653 (*M*+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.03 (d, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 1H), 7.34 (d, *J* = 7.7 Hz, 1H), 7.1 (m, 2H), 7.0-6.9 (m, 2H), 6.17 (d, *J* = 5.1 Hz, 1H), 4.84 (dd, *J* = 10.9, 5.0 Hz, 1H), 4.5 (m, 1H), 4.3 (br dd, 2H), 4.02 (dd, *J* = 10.1, 15.1 Hz, 1H), 3.76 (d, *J* = 14.1 Hz, 1H), 3.42 (d, *J* = 15.1 Hz, 1H), 3.31 (d, *J* = 14.1 Hz, 1H), 3.15-2.95 (m, 4H), 2.3-1.9 (m, 8H), 1.26 (s, 3H), 1.24 (s, 3H).

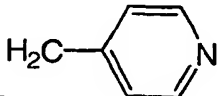
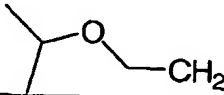

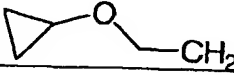
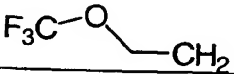
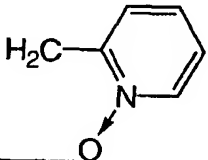
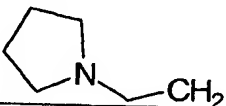
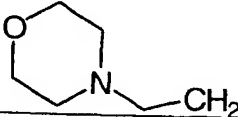
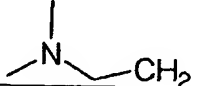

Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Examples 82-90, the Examples in Table E-4 were prepared.

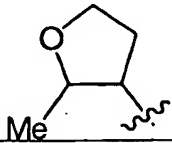
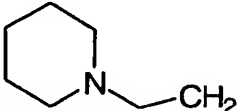
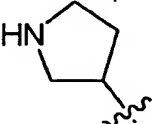
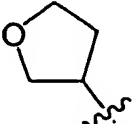

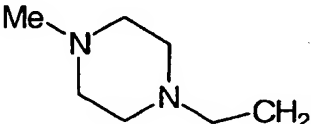
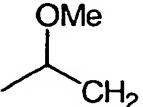
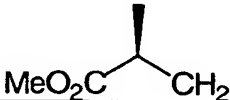
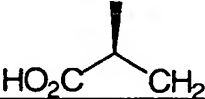
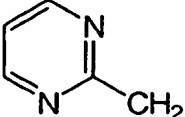
TABLE E-4

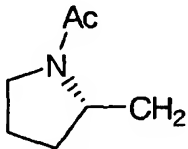
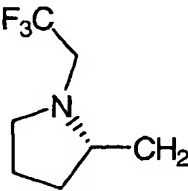
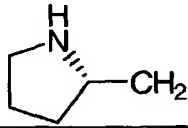
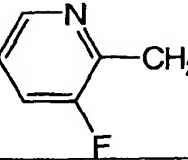
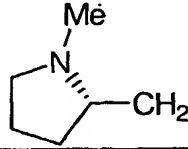
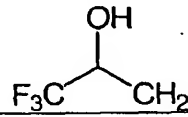
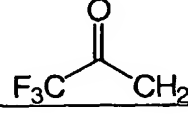
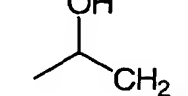
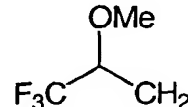


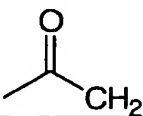
Example	R	MS (M+1)
91	CH ₃	499.2
92	CH ₂ CH ₃	513.2
93		539.3
94	CH ₂ CH ₂ F	531.1
95	CH ₂ CHF ₂	549.1
96		569.3
97		569.3
98	CH ₂ CO ₂ CH ₃	557.2287
99		561.2
100		562.2

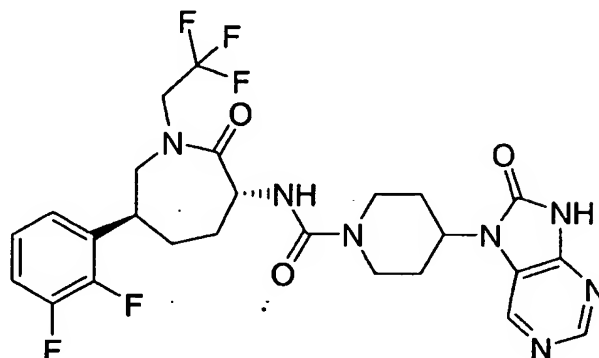
101		639.2
102		639.2
103		606.3
104		566.2344
105	$\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	527.2545
106		579.2658
107		579.2656
108		579.2657
109		596.2242
110		576.2496

111		576.2499
112		571
113		557.2
114		569.2651
115		597.2193
116	$\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$	543.2163
117		592.2433
118	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{SO}_2\text{CH}_3$	591.2169
119		582.2972
120		598.2944
121		556.2834
122	$\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$	585
123		528.3

124		596.2681
125		596.3153
126		554.2665
127		555.2526
128		542.2683
129		611.3289
130		557.2666
131	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CF}_3$	581.2296
132		585.2655
133		571
134		577.2484

135		610.2954
136		650.2914
137		568.2834
138		594.2412
139		582.2901
140	CH ₂ CH ₂ OH	529.2383
141		597.2244
142		595.2064
143		543.2504
144		612.3378

145		541.2362
-----	---	----------

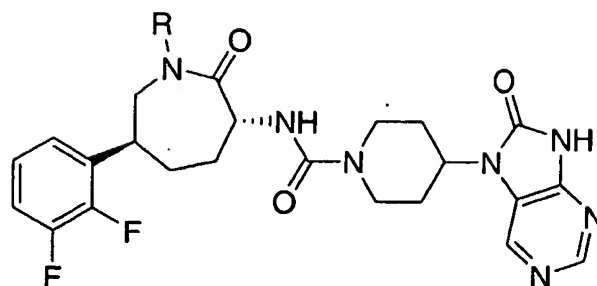
EXAMPLE 146

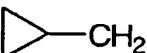
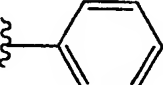
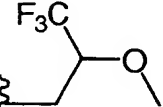
N-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-3-yl]-4-(8-oxo-8,9-dihydro-7*H*-purin-7-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

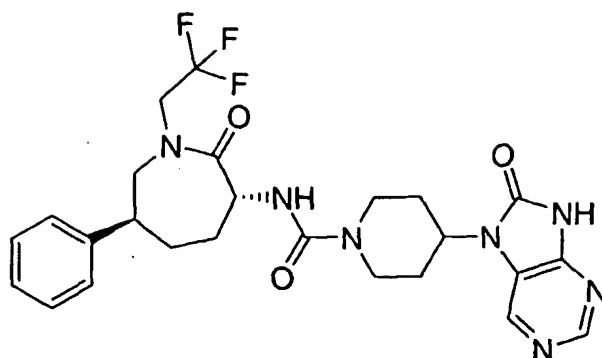
Triethylamine (0.030 mL, 0.215 mmol) was added to a solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-2-one (80 mg, 0.248 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (44 mg, 0.218 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (3 mL) at 0 °C. After 0.5 h, 7-piperidin-4-yl-7,9-dihydro-8*H*-purin-8-one hydrochloride (73 mg, 0.248 mmol) and triethylamine (0.120 mL, 0.860 mmol) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 18 h, the mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with water (2x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (100% dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/methanol) gave the title compound (114 mg). MS 567.2123 (M+1).

Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Example 146, the Examples in Table E-5 were prepared.

TABLE E-5

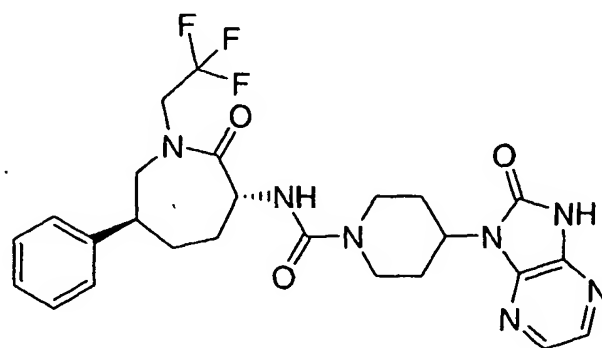


Example	R	MS (M+1)
147	CH ₃	500.2182
148		540.2493
149	CH ₂ CHF ₂	550.2159
150	CH ₂ CH ₂ OCF ₃	598.2147
151	CH ₂ CH ₂ SCH ₃	560.2217
152	CH ₂ CH ₂ SOCH ₃	576.2174
153	CH ₂ CH ₂ SO ₂ CH ₃	592.2
154	CH ₂ CH ₂ OCH ₃	544.2473
155	CH ₂ CH ₂ OH	530.2336
156		562.2338
157		612.2349

EXAMPLE 158

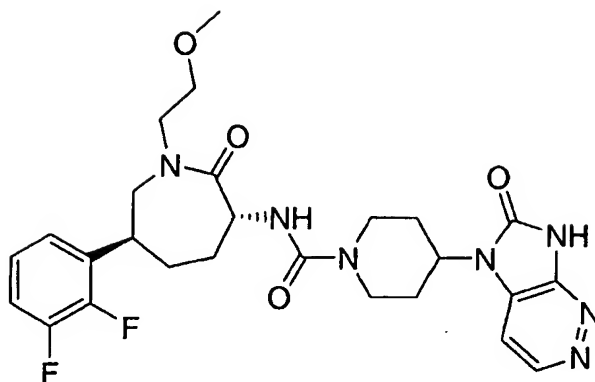
5 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-Phenyl-2-oxo-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-3-yl]-4-(8-oxo-8,9-dihydro-7*H*-purin-7-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Prepared essentially following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 146. MS 532.2250 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 159

15 4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyrazin-1-yl)-*N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-2-oxo-6-phenyl-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-3-yl]piperidine-1-carboxamide

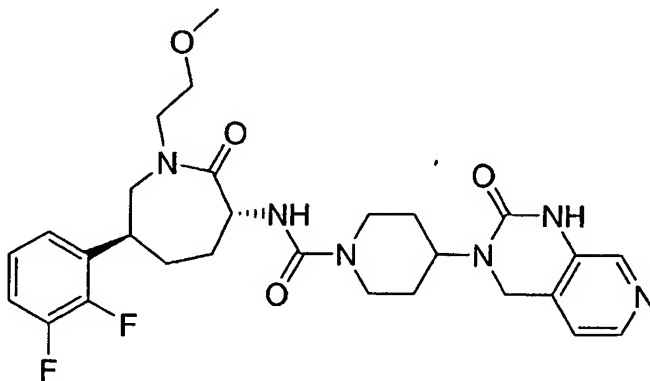
Prepared essentially following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 146. MS 532.2292 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 160

5 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(6-oxo-6,7-dihydro-5*H*-imidazo[4,5-*c*]pyridazin-5-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Prepared essentially following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 146. MS 544.2465 (M+1).

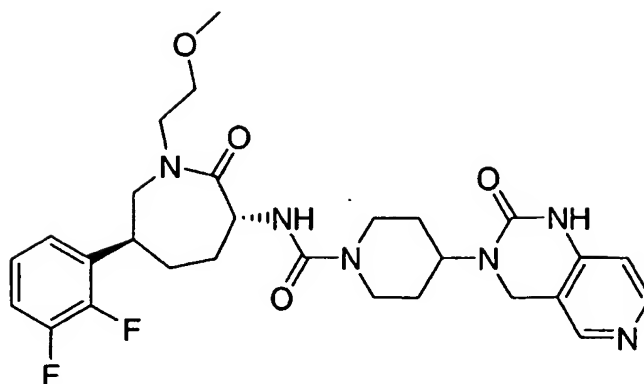
10

EXAMPLE 161

15 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[3,4-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

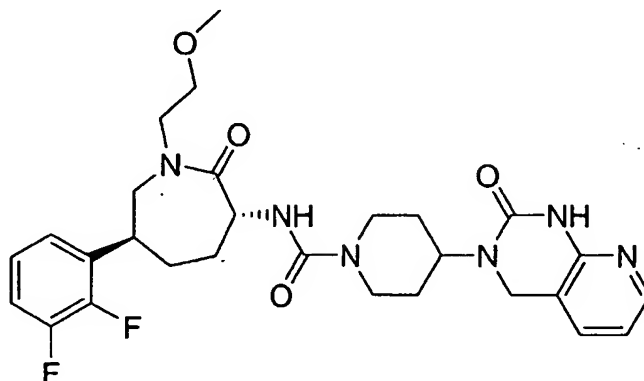
Prepared essentially following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 146. MS 557.2645

20

EXAMPLE 162

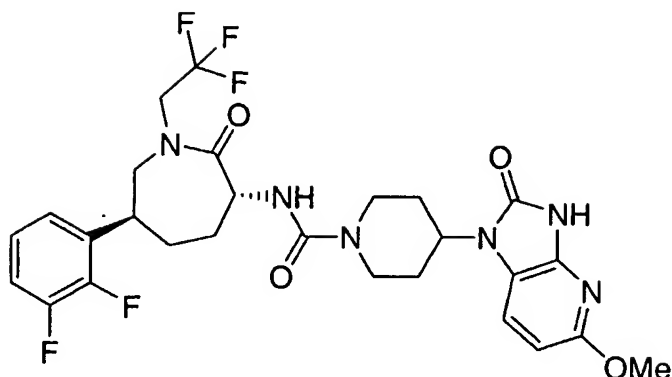
5 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[4,3-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Prepared essentially following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 146 MS 557.2683

EXAMPLE 163

15 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-1,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-*d*]pyrimidin-3(2*H*)-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

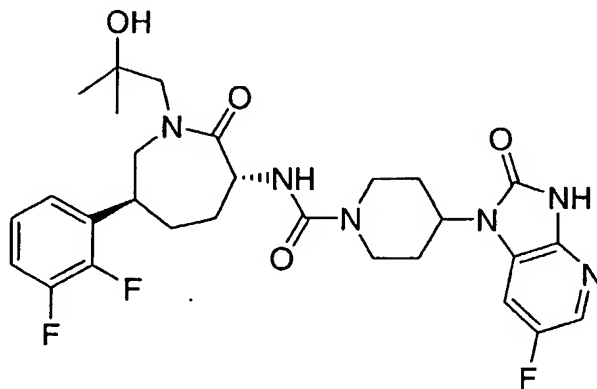
Prepared essentially following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 146. MS 557.2701

EXAMPLE 164

5 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-3-yl]-4-(5-methoxy-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Prepared essentially following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 146. MS 597.2228 (M+1).

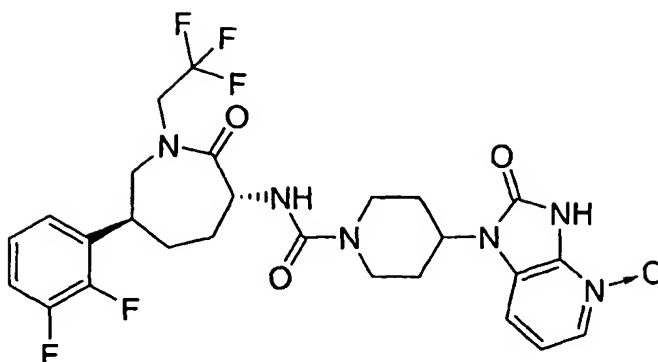
10

EXAMPLE 165

15 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(6-fluoro-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Prepared essentially following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 146. MS 575.2584 (M+1).

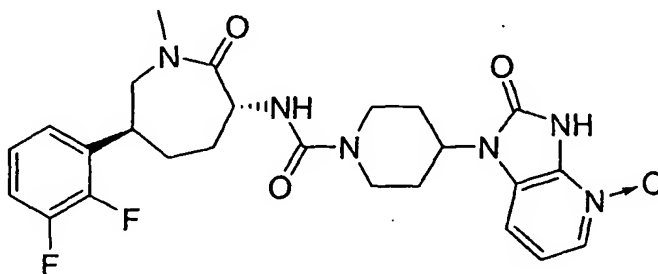
20

EXAMPLE 166

5 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-2-oxo-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)azepan-3-yl]-4-(4-oxido-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Prepared essentially following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 146. MS 583.2076 (M+1).

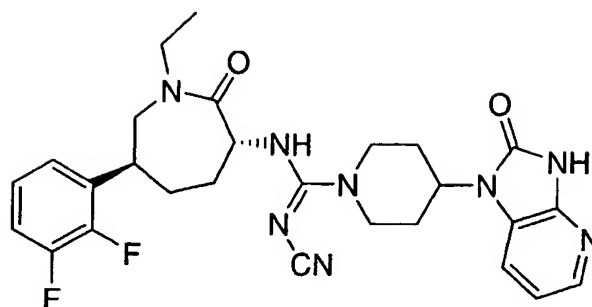
10

EXAMPLE 167

15 *N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-methyl-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(4-oxido-2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Prepared essentially following the procedure outlined for the preparation of Example 146. MS 515.2205 (M+1).

20

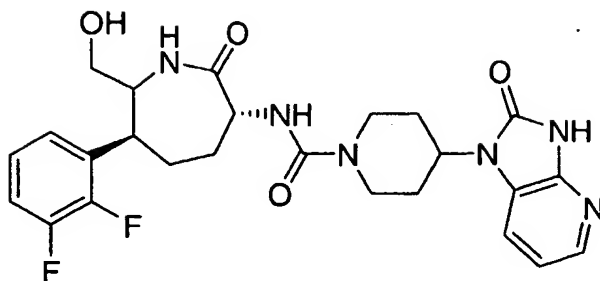
EXAMPLE 168

5 Step A. Phenyl *N'*-cyano-*N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-ethyl-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]imidocarbamate.

A solution of (3*R*,6*S*)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-ethylazepan-2-one (135 mg, 0.503 mmol) in dichloromethane was treated *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (65 mg, 0.503 mmol) and diphenyl *N*-cyanocarbonimidate (204 mg, 0.855 mmol). After 5 h, the reaction was
 10 quenched with 0.5N NaOH and the organic layer washed with water and brine. The combined aqueous layers were extracted with EtOAc. The combined organics were dried, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (EtOAc / hexanes) gave the title compound (166 mg). MS 413.3 (M+1).

15 Step B. *N'*-Cyano-*N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-ethyl-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboximidamide

A solution of phenyl *N'*-cyano-*N*-[(3*R*,6*S*)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-ethyl-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]imidocarbamate (166 mg, 0.402 mmol) and 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine dihydrochloride (116 mg, 0.402 mmol), in 1-pentanol (10 mL) was
 20 treated with *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (52 mg, 0.402 mmol). This mixture was heated to reflux for 24 h. Concentration and purification by silica gel chromatography (0% → 10% methanol / dichloromethane) followed by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 95% water/ acetonitrile → 5% water/ acetonitrile with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) gave the title compound (10 mg). MS 537.5 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 169

N-[(3R,6S)-6-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-7-(hydroxymethyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Step A. Benzyl (2R,5S)-2-[bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-7-hydroxy-6-nitroheptanoate

To a solution of (5S)-N,N-bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-6-nitro-D-norleucinate (2.30 g, 3.975 mmol) and 1,1,3,3-tetramethylguanidine (46 mg, 0.40 mmol) in acetonitrile (20 mL) was added formaldehyde (0.15 mL, 37% aqueous solution). After stirring for 60 min, more formaldehyde (0.050 mL, 37% aqueous solution) was added. After stirring for an additional 60 min the mixture was diluted with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3x). The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give a residue that was purified by silica gel chromatography (25% → 75% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) to give the title compound (1.44 g.). MS 409.1 (M+1 – 2Boc).

Step B. (5S)-N²,N²-bis(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-6-(hydroxymethyl)-D-lysine

A solution of benzyl (2R,5S)-2-[bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-7-hydroxy-6-nitroheptanoate (180 mg, 0.49 mmol) and 10% Pd/C (300 mg) in EtOH (5 mL, SureSeal from Aldrich), was hydrogenated at 55 psi for 7 d (200 mg more Pd/C was added after 3 d). The reaction was filtered through Celite with more EtOH and concentrated to afford the title compound (180 mg). MS 489.1 (M+1).

Step C. Di-tert-butyl [(3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-7-(hydroxymethyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]imidodicarbonate

To a solution (5S)-N²,N²-bis(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-6-(hydroxymethyl)-D-lysine (180 mg, 0.37 mmol) in DCM (5 mL) were added EDC (106 mg, 0.55

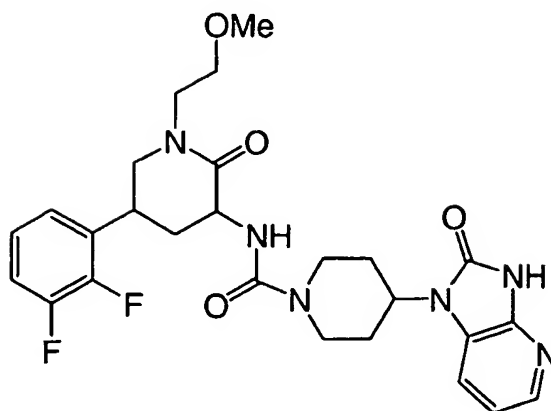
mmol) and HOAT (50 mg, 0.37 mmol). After 30 min, NaHCO₃ was added, the layers separated and the aqueous phase backwashed with DCM. The combined organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated and the residue purified by silica gel chromatography (0% → 10% MeOH/ DCM) to give the title compound (100 mg). MS 471.1 (M+1).

Step D. (3R,6S)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-7-(hydroxymethyl)azepan-2-one

Di-*tert*-butyl [(3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-7-(hydroxymethyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]imidodicarbonate (100 mg, 0.213 mmol) was diluted DCM (30 mL) and TFA (8 mL) was added. After 2 h, the reaction was concentrated to give the title compound as its TFA salt (57 mg). MS 271.0 (M+1).

Step E. N-[(3R,6S)-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-7-(hydroxymethyl)-2-oxoazepan-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Triethylamine (0.68 mL, 0.49 mmol) was added to a solution of (3R,6S)-3-amino-6-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-7-(hydroxymethyl)azepan-2-one (57 mg, 0.21 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (47 mg, 0.23 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (10 mL) at 0 °C. After 30 min, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidiny)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride (98 mg, 0.34 mmol), triethylamine (0.84 mmol) and chloroform (10 mL) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. The reaction was stirred overnight, concentrated, diluted with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and extracted with dichloromethane (2x). The organic layer was washed with water, saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (1% → 12% methanol / dichloromethane) gave the title compound (17 mg). MS 515.2203 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 170

5 *N*-[5-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxopiperidin-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Step A. 5-Bromo-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-3-nitropyridin-2(1*H*)-one

Cesium carbonate (14.88 g, 45.66 mmol) was added to a solution of 5-bromo-3-nitropyridin-2-ol (10.0 g, 45.7 mmol) and 2-bromoethyl methyl ether (4.29 mL, 45.66 mmol) in
 10 *N,N*-dimethylformamide (400 mL). After 3 h, additional 2-bromoethyl methyl ether (4.29 mL, 45.7 mmol) was added, and the reaction was heated to 60 °C. After 4 h, water was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (3x), and the combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (100% hexanes → 40% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound
 15 (7.39 g). MS 277 (M).

Step B. 5-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-3-nitropyridin-2(1*H*)-one

Palladium acetate (41.0 mg, 0.18 mmol) was added to a solution of 5-bromo-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-3-nitropyridin-2(1*H*)-one (500 mg, 1.81 mmol), 2,3-difluorophenyl boronic acid
 20 (570 mg, 3.61 mmol), diisopropylamine (0.759 mL, 5.41 mmol) and 3,3',3''-phosphinidynetris(benzenesulfonic acid) trisodium salt (310 mg, 0.541 mmol), in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (15 mL) and water (5 mL) and heated to 80 °C. After 2 h, the mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and filtered. Purification by reverse phase HPLC (C-18, 95% water/ acetonitrile → 5% water/ acetonitrile with 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) gave the title
 25 compound (335mg). MS 311 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.56 (d, *J* = 2.7 Hz, 1H),

8.03 (d, $J = 2.4$ Hz, 1H), 7.23-7.18 (m, 2H), 7.15-7.12 (m, 1H), 4.33 (t, $J = 4.8$ Hz, 2H), 3.74 (t, $J = 4.8$ Hz, 2H), 3.35 (s, 3H).

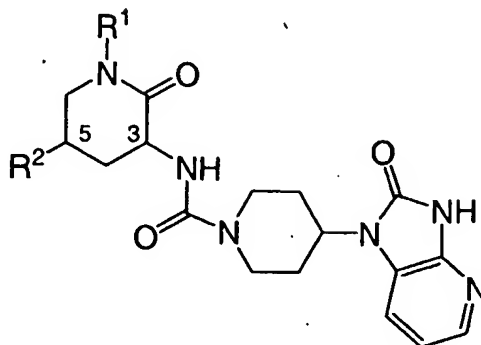
Step C. 3-Amino-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)piperidin-2-one

10% Platinum on carbon (320 mg) was added to a solution of 5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-3-nitropyridin-2(1H)-one (300 mg, 0.967 mmol) in acetic acid (10 mL). The reaction vessel was evacuated and back-filled with nitrogen (3x), then back-filled with hydrogen (56 psi). After 65 h, the mixture was filtered and concentrated. MS 285 (M+1).

Step D. N-[5-(2,3-Difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)-2-oxopiperidin-3-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Triethylamine (83 μ L, 0.598 mmol) was added to a solution of 3-amino-5-(2,3-difluorophenyl)-1-(2-methoxyethyl)piperidin-2-one (170 mg, 0.598 mmol) and 4-nitrophenylchloroformate (121 mg, 0.598 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (4 mL) at 0 °C. After 1 h, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride (174 mg, 0.651 mmol), triethylamine (249 μ L, 1.794 mmol) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 18 h, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (3x), saturated brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography [100% dichloromethane \rightarrow 95% dichloromethane/ 5% (10% ammonium hydroxide/ methanol)] gave the title compound (0.135 g). MS 529.2353 (M+1). ^1H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 8.03 (dd, $J = 5.3, 1.1$ Hz, 1H), 7.38 (dd, $J = 7.8, 1.2$ Hz, 1H), 7.11-7.03 (m, 2H), 7.01-6.96 (m, 2H), 5.82 (d, $J = 3.4$ Hz, 1H), 4.58-4.53 (m, 1H), 4.34-4.30 (m, 1H), 4.23 (d, $J = 6.6$ Hz, 2H), 3.71-3.62 (m, 3H), 3.60-3.53 (m, 3H), 3.52-3.46 (m, 1H), 3.33 (s, 3H), 2.96 (dd, $J = 23.4, 10.5$ Hz, 2H), 2.80-2.78 (m, 1H), 2.28-2.21 (m, 2H), 1.90 (dd, $J = 10.5, 2.0$ Hz, 2H).

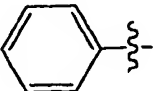
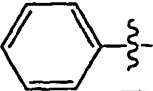
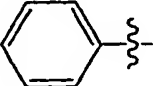
Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Example 170, the Examples in Table E-6 were prepared.

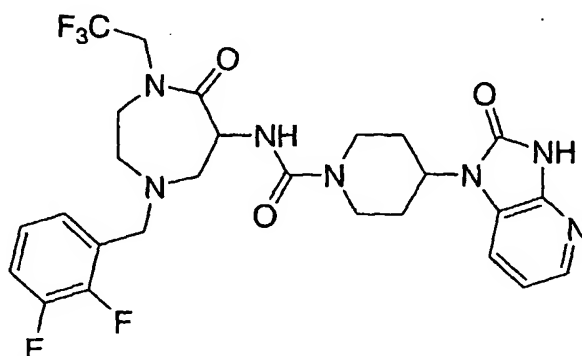


5

TABLE E-6

Examples	C-3	C-5	R ¹	R ²	MS (M+1)
171	R or S	R or S	CH ₂ CH ₂ OCH ₃		493.2519
172	R or S	R or S	CH ₃		449.2285
173	R or S	R or S	CH ₃		485.2098
174	R or S	R or S	CH ₂ CF ₃		517.2154
175	R or S	R or S	CH ₂ CF ₃		553.1962
176	R	R	CH ₂ CF ₃		517

177	R	S	CH ₂ CF ₃		517
178	S	R	CH ₂ CF ₃		517
179	S	S	CH ₂ CF ₃		517

EXAMPLE 180

N-[1-(2,3-Difluorobenzyl)-5-oxo-4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-diazepan-6-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Step A: Benzyl 6-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-oxo-1,4-diazepane-1-carboxylate

10 Triethylamine (0.56 mL, 3.99 mmol) was added to a solution of benzyl 6-amino-5-oxo-1,4-diazepane-1-carboxylate (1.05 g, 3.99 mmol) and di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (1.31 g, 6.00 mmol) in dichloromethane (30 mL). After 18 h, water was added, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (100%
15 dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/ methanol) gave the title compound (1.35 g). MS 364 (M+1).

Step B: Benzyl 6-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-oxo-4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-diazepane-1-carboxylate

Sodium hydride (60% dispersion in mineral oil; 180 mg, 4.43 mmol) was added to a solution of benzyl 6-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-oxo-1,4-diazepane-1-carboxylate (1.34 g, 3.69 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (25 mL) at -35°C. After 15 min, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl trichloromethanesulfonate (0.911 mL, 5.54 mmol) was added and the reaction was stirred at -35 °C. After 2 h, an additional amount of sodium hydride (100 mg, 2.5 mmol) and trichloromethanesulfonate (0.500 mL, 3.04 mmol) were added. After 18 h, the reaction was quenched with water and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water (3x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography (hexanes → 30% ethyl acetate/ hexanes) gave the title compound (690 mg). MS 446 (M+1).

Step C: *tert*-Butyl 7-oxo-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-diazepan-6-ylcarbamate

10% Palladium on carbon (77 mg) was added to a solution of benzyl 6-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-oxo-4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-diazepane-1-carboxylate (590 mg, 1.32 mmol) in ethanol (20 mL). The reaction vessel was evacuated and back-filled with nitrogen (3x), then back-filled with hydrogen (1 atm). After 18 h, the mixture was filtered and concentrated to give the title compound (420 mg). MS 312 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 5.83 (s, 1H), 4.53-4.49 (m, 1H), 4.29-4.20 (m, 1H), 3.96-3.88 (m, 1H), 3.81-3.77 (m, 1H), 3.38 (d, *J* = 15.6 Hz, 1H), 3.26 (d, *J* = 12.9 Hz, 1H), 3.16-3.13 (m, 1H), 2.81-2.79 (m, 1H), 2.72-2.67 (m, 1H), 1.83 (br s, 1H), 1.45 (s, 9H).

Step D: *tert*-Butyl 1-(2,3-difluorobenzyl)-5-oxo-4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-diazepan-6-ylcarbamate

A mixture of *tert*-butyl 7-oxo-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-diazepan-6-ylcarbamate (51 mg, 0.16 mmol), 2,3-difluorobenzaldehyde (0.053 mL, 0.49 mmol), and sodium cyanoborohydride (31 mg, 0.49 mmol) in methanol (5 mL) was adjusted to pH 4 with acetic acid. After 0.5 h, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography [100% dichloromethane → 95% dichloromethane/ 5% (10% ammonium hydroxide/ methanol)] gave the title compound (62 mg). MS 438 (M+1).

Step E: 6-Amino-1-(2,3-difluorobenzyl)-4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-diazepan-5-one

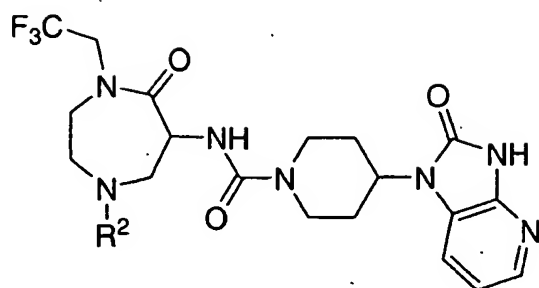
Trifluoroacetic acid (2.5 mL) was added to a solution of *tert*-butyl 1-(2,3-difluorobenzyl)-5-oxo-4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-diazepan-6-ylcarbamate (62 mg, 0.142 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL). After 1 h, the solution was concentrated. Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added and the mixture was extracted with dichloromethane (3x). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give the title compound (45 mg). MS 338 (M+1).

Step F: N-[1-(2,3-Difluorobenzyl)-5-oxo-4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-diazepan-6-yl]-4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-yl)piperidine-1-carboxamide

Triethylamine (0.012 mL, 0.133 mmol) was added to a solution of 6-amino-1-(2,3-difluorobenzyl)-4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1,4-diazepan-5-one (45 mg, 0.133 mmol) and 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (27 mg, 133 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2.5 mL) at 0 °C. After 1 h, 2-oxo-1-(4-piperidinyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine dihydrochloride (43 mg, 0.147 mmol) and triethylamine (0.048 mL, 0.532 mmol) were added and the mixture allowed to warm to ambient temperature. After 18 h, the mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with water (2x), saturated brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Purification by silica gel chromatography [100% dichloromethane → 92% dichloromethane/ methanol (10% ammonium hydroxide/ methanol)] gave the title compound (67 mg). MS 582.2262 (M+1). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.77 (s, 1H), 8.03 (d, *J* = 5.4 Hz, 1H), 7.31 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.27-7.24 (m, 1H), 7.09-7.05 (m, 2H), 6.98 (dd, *J* = 8.1, 5.4 Hz, 1H), 5.99 (d, *J* = 4.9 Hz, 1H), 4.91-4.88 (m, 1H), 4.57-4.50 (m, 1H), 4.25-4.16 (m, 3H), 4.00-3.92 (m, 2H), 3.84 (dd, *J* = 32.7, 14.2 Hz, 2H), 3.36-3.34 (m, 1H), 3.20 (d, *J* = 12.5 Hz, 1H), 2.99-2.91 (m, 3H), 2.44-2.37 (m, 2H), 2.31-2.18 (m, 2H), 1.90 (d, *J* = 11.0 Hz, 2H).

Essentially following the procedures outlined for the preparation of Example 180, the Examples in Table E-7 were prepared.

TABLE E-7

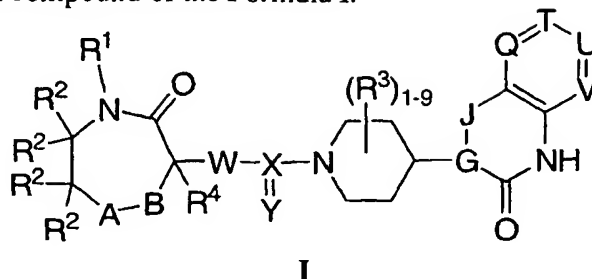


5

Example	R^2	MS (M+1)
181		546.2450
182	H	456.1983
183		590.2295

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of the Formula I:



wherein:

A is a bond, $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

B is $(C(R^2)_2)_n$;

R^1 is selected from:

- 1) H, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_2 - C_6 alkenyl, C_2 - C_6 alkynyl, C_3 - C_6 cycloalkyl, and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
 - a) C_1 - C_6 alkyl,
 - b) C_3 - C_6 cycloalkyl,
 - c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 - g) halogen,
 - h) OR^4 ,
 - i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,
 - j) CO_2R^4 ,
 - k) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$.

- l) $O(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 m) $N(R^4)(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 n) $N(R^{10})(CO)R^{11}$,
 o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
 5 p) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 q) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
 r) $S(O)_mR^{10}$,
 s) CN,
 t) $NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 10 u) $N(R^{10})(CO)NR^4R^{11}$ and,
 v) $O(CO)R^4$;
- 2) aryl or heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
- 15 a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
 b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
 c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents
 20 where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 g) halogen,
 25 h) OR^4 ,
 i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,
 j) CO_2R^4 ,
 k) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 l) $O(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 30 m) $N(R^4)(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 n) $N(R^{10})(CO)R^{11}$,
 o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
 p) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 q) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$.

- 5
- r) $S(O)_m R^{10}$,
 - s) CN,
 - t) $NR^{10} R^{11}$,
 - u) $N(R^{10})(CO)NR^4 R^{11}$ and,
 - v) $O(CO)R^4$;

R^2 is independently selected from:

- 10
- 1) H, C₀-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₂-C₆ alkynyl, C₃-6 cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
 - a) C₁-6 alkyl,
 - b) C₃-6 cycloalkyl,
 - c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - 15 d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - f) $(F)_p C_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 - 20 g) halogen,
 - h) OR^4 ,
 - i) $O(CH_2)_s OR^4$,
 - j) $CO_2 R^4$,
 - k) $(CO)NR^{10} R^{11}$,
 - 25 l) $O(CO)NR^{10} R^{11}$,
 - m) $N(R^4)(CO)NR^{10} R^{11}$,
 - n) $N(R^{10})(CO)R^{11}$,
 - o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
 - p) $SO_2 NR^{10} R^{11}$,
 - 30 q) $N(R^{10}) SO_2 R^{11}$,
 - r) $S(O)_m R^{10}$,
 - s) CN,
 - t) $NR^{10} R^{11}$,
 - u) $N(R^{10})(CO)NR^4 R^{11}$ and,

v) $O(CO)R^4$;

2) aryl or heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:

- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
- b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
- g) halogen,
- h) OR^4 ,
- i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,
- j) CO_2R^4 ,
- k) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- l) $O(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- m) $N(R^4)(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- n) $N(R^{10})(CO)R^{11}$,
- o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
- p) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- q) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
- r) $S(O)_mR^{10}$,
- s) CN,
- t) $NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- u) $N(R^{10})(CO)NR^4R^{11}$ and,
- v) $O(CO)R^4$,

or, any two independent R^2 on the same or adjacent atoms may be joined together to form a ring selected from cyclobutyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexenyl, cyclohexyl, phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, thiazolinyl, oxazolyl, oxazolinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, imidazolidinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolinyl,

morpholinyl, thiomorpholine, thiomorpholine S-oxide, thiomorpholine S-dioxide, azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydropyridyl, furanyl, dihydrofuranyl, dihydropyranyl and piperazinyl;

- 5 R^{10} and R^{11} are independently selected from: H, C₁₋₆ alkyl, (F)_pC₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and benzyl, unsubstituted or substituted with halogen, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy, where R^{10} and R^{11} may be joined together to form a ring selected from: azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, or morpholinyl, which is unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ;

10

R^4 is independently selected from: H, C₁₋₆ alkyl, (F)_pC₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl and benzyl, unsubstituted or substituted with halogen, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy;

W is O, NR⁴ or C(R⁴)₂;

15

X is C or S;

Y is O, (R⁴)₂, NCN, NSO₂CH₃, NCONH₂, or Y is O₂ when X is S;

- 20 R^6 is independently selected from H and:

- a) C₁₋₆ alkyl,
- b) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl,
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- 25 d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- f) (F)_pC₁₋₃ alkyl,
- 30 g) halogen,
- h) OR⁴,
- i) O(CH₂)_sOR⁴,
- j) CO₂R⁴,
- k) (CO)NR¹⁰R¹¹.

- 5 l) $O(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 m) $N(R^4)(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 n) $N(R^{10})(CO)R^{11}$,
 o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
 p) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 q) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
 r) $S(O)_mR^{10}$,
 s) CN,
 t) $NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 10 u) $N(R^{10})(CO)NR^4R^{11}$ and,
 v) $O(CO)R^4$;

15 G-J is selected from: N, $N-C(R^5)_2$, $C=C(R^5)$, $C=N$; $C(R^5)$, $C(R^5)-C(R^5)_2$, $C(R^5)-C(R^5)_2-$
 $C(R^5)_2$, $C=C(R^5)-C(R^5)_2$, $C(R^5)-C(R^5)=C(R^5)$, $C(R^5)-C(R^5)_2-N(R^5)$, $C=C(R^5)-N(R^5)$,
 $C(R^5)-C(R^5)=N$, $C(R^5)-N(R^5)-C(R^5)_2$, $C=N-C(R^5)_2$, $C(R^5)-N=C(R^5)$, $C(R^5)-N(R^5)-N(R^5)$,
 $C=N-N(R^5)$, $N-C(R^5)_2-C(R^5)_2$, $N-C(R^5)=C(R^5)$, $N-C(R^5)_2-N(R^5)$, $N-C(R^5)=N$, $N-N(R^5)-$
 $C(R^5)_2$ and $N-N=C(R^5)$;

20 Q, T, U and V are each independently carbon or nitrogen wherein at least one but no more than
 three of Q, T, U and V are nitrogen, of which one may be optionally an N-oxide, and wherein
 when any of Q, T, U, or V is carbon it is unsubstituted or substituted where the substituents are
 independently selected from R^6 ;

25 R^5 is independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1-C_3 alkyl, CN, OR^4 ,
 $N(R^4)_2$ and CO_2R^4 ;

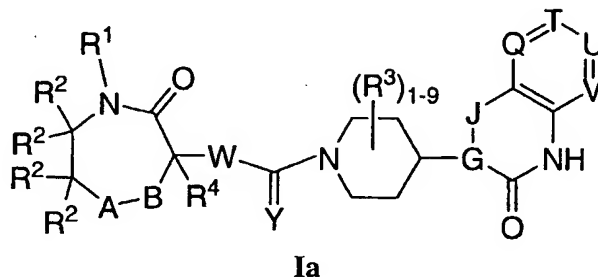
R^3 is independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1-C_3 alkyl, F, CN and
 CO_2R^4 ;

30 p is 0 to $2q+1$, for a substituent with q carbons;
 m is 0, 1 or 2;
 n is 0 or 1;
 s is 1, 2 or 3;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual diastereomers thereof.

5

2. The compound of claim 1 of the Formula Ia:



10

wherein:

A is a bond, $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

B is $(C(R^2)_2)_n$;

15

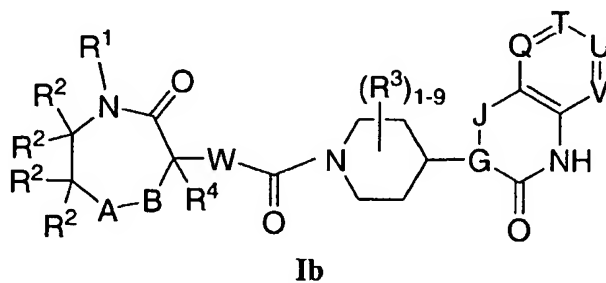
Y is O or NCN; and

n is 0 or 1;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

3. The compound of claim 1 of the Formula Ib:

20



wherein:

25

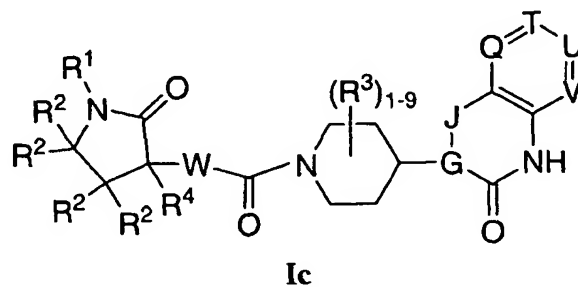
A is a bond, $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

B is $(C(R^2)_2)_n$; and

n is 0 or 1;

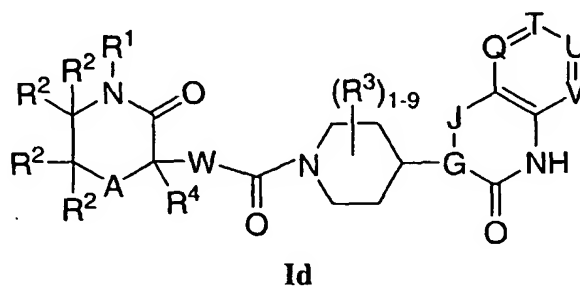
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

4. The compound of claim 1 of the Formula Ic:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

5. The compound of claim 1 of the Formula Id:

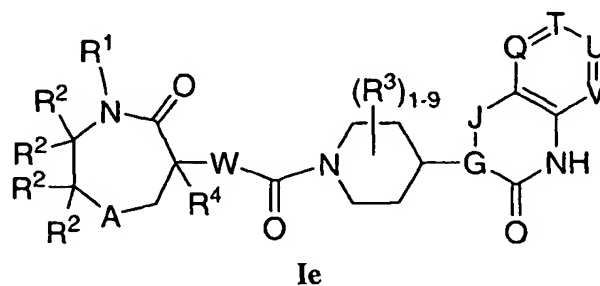


15 wherein:

A is C(R²)₂, O, S(O)_m or NR²;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

6. The compound of claim 1 of the Formula Ie:



wherein:

A is $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

5

7. The compound of claim 1, wherein:

R^1 is selected from:

1) H, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_3 -6 cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted
10 with one or more substituents independently selected from:

- a) C_1 -6 alkyl,
- b) C_3 -6 cycloalkyl,
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where
the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- 15 d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents
where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents
where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
- 20 g) halogen,
- h) OR^4 ,
- i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,
- j) CO_2R^4 ,
- k) CN,
- 25 l) $NR^{10}R^{11}$, and
- m) $O(CO)R^4$; and

2) aryl or heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents
independently selected from:

- a) C_1 -6 alkyl,
- 30 b) C_3 -6 cycloalkyl,
- c) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
- d) halogen,
- e) OR^4 ,
- f) CO_2R^4 .

- g) $(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
- h) $\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
- i) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{11}$,
- j) $\text{S}(\text{O})_m\text{R}^4$,
- 5 k) CN and
- l) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$, and
- m) $\text{O}(\text{CO})\text{R}^4$; and

R^2 is selected from:

- 10 1) H, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6$ alkyl, $\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6$ alkynyl, $\text{C}_3\text{-6}$ cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
 - a) $\text{C}_1\text{-6}$ alkyl,
 - b) $\text{C}_3\text{-6}$ cycloalkyl,
 - 15 c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - 20 f) $(\text{F})_p\text{C}_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 - g) halogen,
 - h) OR^4 ,
 - i) $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_s\text{OR}^4$,
 - j) CO_2R^4 ,
 - 25 k) $\text{S}(\text{O})_m\text{R}^4$,
 - l) CN,
 - m) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$, and
 - n) $\text{O}(\text{CO})\text{R}^4$; and
- 30 2) aryl or heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with one more substituents independently selected from:
 - a) $\text{C}_1\text{-6}$ alkyl,
 - b) $\text{C}_3\text{-6}$ cycloalkyl,
 - c) $(\text{F})_p\text{C}_{1-3}$ alkyl,

- 5
- d) halogen,
 - e) OR^4 ,
 - f) CO_2R^4 ,
 - g) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - h) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - i) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
 - j) $S(O)_mR^4$,
 - k) CN ,
 - l) $NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - 10 m) $O(CO)R^4$,

15 or, any two independent R^2 on the same or adjacent atoms may be joined together to form a ring selected from cyclobutyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexenyl, cyclohexyl, phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, thiazolinyl, oxazolyl, oxazolinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, imidazolidinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholine, thiomorpholine S-oxide, thiomorpholine S-dioxide, azetidyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydropyridyl, furanyl, dihydrofuranyl, dihydropyranyl and piperazinyl;

20 G-J is selected from:

N, $N-C(R^5)_2$, $C=C(R^5)$, $C=N$, $C=C(R^5)-C(R^5)$, $C(R^5)-C(R^5)=C(R^5)$, $N-C(R^5)_2-C(R^5)_2$ and $N-C(R^5)=C(R^5)$;

25 R^6 is independently selected from H and:

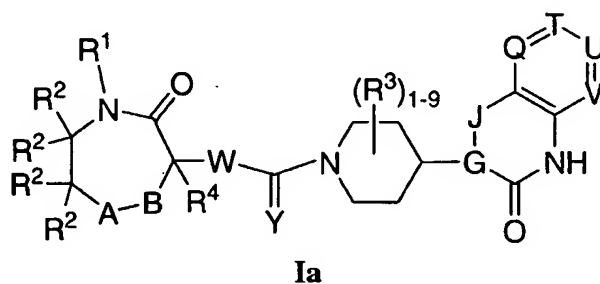
- 30
- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
 - b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
 - c) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 - d) halogen,
 - e) OR^4 ,
 - f) CO_2R^4 ,
 - g) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - h) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 - i) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$.

- j) $S(O)_mR^4$,
- k) CN,
- l) $NR^{10}R^{11}$, and
- m) $O(CO)R^4$;

5

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

8. The compound of claim 7 of the Formula Ia:



10

wherein:

15 A is a bond, $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

B is $(C(R^2)_2)_n$;

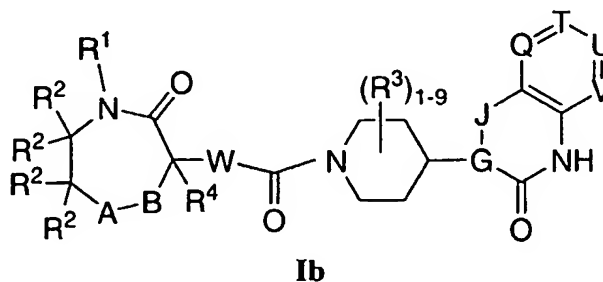
Y is O or NCN; and

n is 0 or 1;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

20

9. The compound of claim 7 of the Formula Ib:



25 wherein:

A is a bond, $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

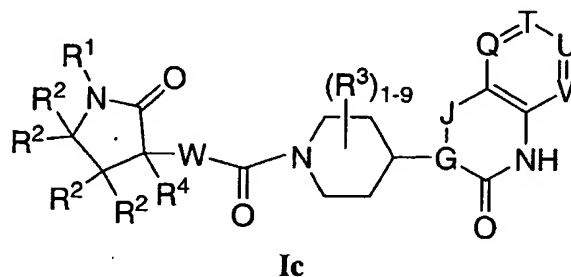
B is $(C(R^2)_2)_n$; and

n is 0 or 1;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

5

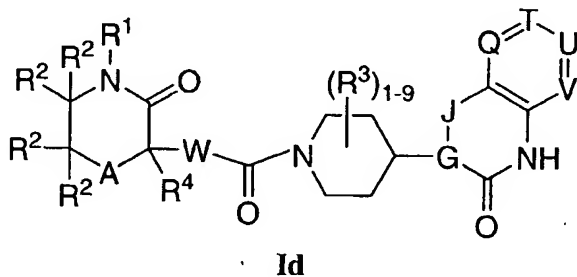
10. The compound of claim 7 of the Formula Ic:



10

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

11. The compound of claim 7 of the Formula Id:



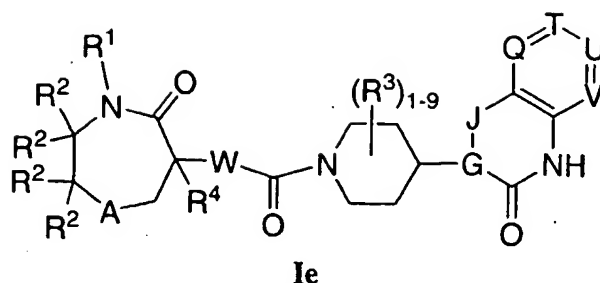
15

wherein:

A is $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

20 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

12. The compound of claim 7 of the Formula Ic:



wherein:

5 A is $C(R^2)_2$, O, $S(O)_m$ or NR^2 ;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

13. The compound of claim 1, wherein:

10 R^1 is selected from:

1) H, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_3 -6 cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:

a) C_1 -6 alkyl,

b) C_3 -6 cycloalkyl,

15 c) phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,

d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 , and where heteroaryl is selected from:

20 imidazole, isoxazole, oxazole, pyrazine, pyrazole, pyridazine, pyridine, pyrimidine, and thiazole;

e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 , and where heterocycle is selected from:

25 azetidine, dioxane, dioxolane, morpholine, oxetane, piperazine, piperidine, pyrrolidine, tetrahydrofuran, and tetrahydropyran;

f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,

g) halogen,

h) OR^4 .

30 i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,

- j) CO_2R^4 .
- k) CN, and
- l) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$; and

- 5 2) aryl or heteroaryl, selected from:
 phenyl, imidazole, isoxazole, oxazole, pyrazine, pyrazole, pyridazine, pyridine,
 pyrimidine, and thiazole; unsubstituted or substituted with one or more
 substituents independently selected from:
- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
 - 10 b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
 - c) $(\text{F})_p\text{C}_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 - d) halogen,
 - e) OR^4 ,
 - f) CO_2R^4 ,
 - 15 g) $(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
 - h) $\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,
 - i) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{11}$,
 - j) $\text{S}(\text{O})_m\text{R}^4$,
 - k) CN and
 - 20 l) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$;

R^2 is selected from:

- 1) H, $\text{C}_0\text{-C}_6$ alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or
 25 more substituents independently selected from:
- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
 - b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
 - c) phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents
 where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - 30 d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents
 where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 and where heteroaryl is selected from:

benzimidazole, benzothiophene, furan, imidazole, indole,
isoxazole, oxazole, pyrazine, pyrazole, pyridazine, pyridine,
pyrimidine, pyrrole, thiazole, thiophene, and triazole;

- e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents
where the substituents are independently selected from
 R^4 , and where heterocycle is selected from:

azetidine, imidazolidine, imidazoline, isoxazoline, isoxazolidine,
morpholine, oxazoline, oxazolidine, oxetane, pyrazolidine,
pyrazoline, pyrroline, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydropyran, thiazoline,
and thiazolidine;

- f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
g) halogen,
h) OR^4 ,
i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,
j) CO_2R^4 ,
k) CN, and
l) $NR^{10}R^{11}$; and

- 2) aryl or heteroaryl, selected from:

phenyl, benzimidazole, benzothiophene, furan, imidazole, indole, isoxazole,
oxazole, pyrazine, pyrazole, pyridazine, pyridine, pyrimidine, pyrrole, thiazole,
thiophene, and triazole;

unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected
from:

- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
c) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
d) halogen,
e) OR^4 ,
f) CO_2R^4 ,
g) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
h) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
i) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
j) $S(O)_mR^4$,

- k) CN and
l) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$,

5 or, any two independent R^2 on the same or adjacent atoms may be joined together to form a ring selected from cyclobutyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexenyl, cyclohexyl, phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, thiazolinyl, oxazolyl, oxazolinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, imidazolidinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholine, thiomorpholine S-oxide, thiomorpholine S-dioxide, azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl,
10 tetrahydropyridyl, furanyl, dihydrofuranyl, dihydropyranyl and piperazinyl;

R^{10} and R^{11} are independently selected from: H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $(\text{F})_p\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl and benzyl, unsubstituted or substituted with halogen, hydroxy or $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6$ alkoxy, where R^{10} and R^{11} may be joined together to form a ring selected from: azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl,
15 piperidinyl, piperazinyl and morpholinyl, which is unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ;

R^4 is independently selected from: H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $(\text{F})_p\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl and phenyl, unsubstituted or substituted with hydroxy or $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6$ alkoxy;

20 W is NR^4 or $\text{C}(\text{R}^4)_2$;

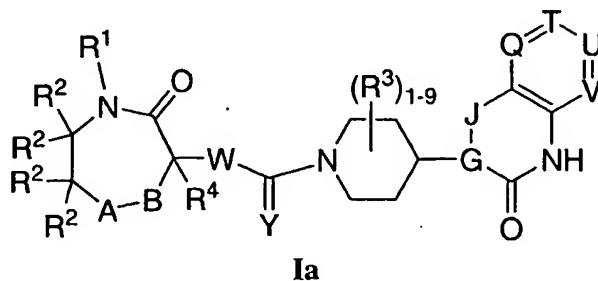
G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)$, G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)$, G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)\text{-N}=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)$,
25 G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}$, G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)\text{-N}=\text{N}$, G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}$, G-J is N and Q-T-U-V is $\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}$, G-J is $\text{N}\text{-C}(\text{R}^5)_2$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}$, G-J is $\text{N}\text{-C}(\text{R}^5)_2$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)$, G-J is $\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{R}^5)$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}$, G-J is $\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{R}^5)$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)$, G-J is $\text{C}=\text{N}$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}$, G-J is $\text{C}=\text{N}$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)$, G-J is $\text{N}\text{-C}(\text{R}^5)_2\text{-C}(\text{R}^5)_2$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}$, or G-J is $\text{N}\text{-C}(\text{R}^5)_2\text{-C}(\text{R}^5)_2$ and Q-T-U-V is $\text{C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{N}\text{-C}(\text{R}^6)=\text{C}(\text{R}^6)$.
30

R^6 is independently selected from H and:

- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
- b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
- c) $(F)_p C_{1-3}$ alkyl;
- d) halogen,
- e) OR^4 ,
- f) CO_2R^4 ,
- g) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- h) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
- i) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
- j) $S(O)_mR^4$,
- k) CN and
- l) $NR^{10}R^{11}$;

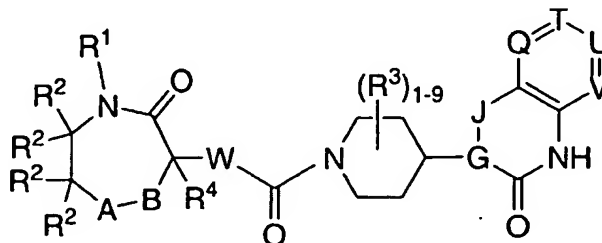
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

14. The compound of claim 13 of the Formula Ia:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

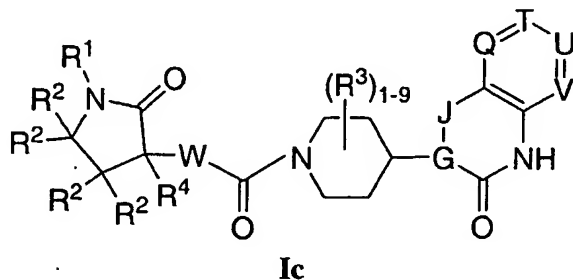
15. The compound of claim 13 of the Formula Ib:



Ib

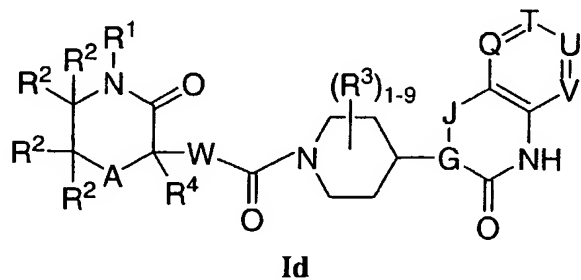
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

16. The compound of claim 13 of the Formula Ic:



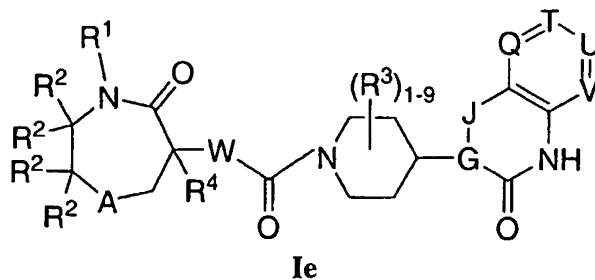
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

17. The compound of claim 13 of the Formula Id:



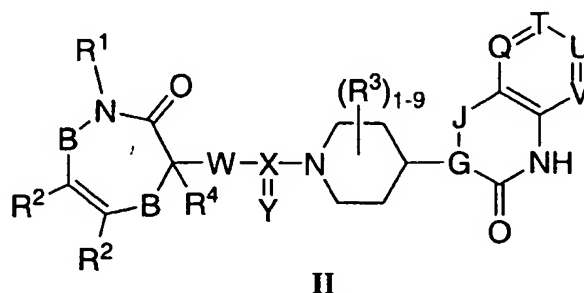
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

18. The compound of claim 13 of the Formula Ie:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

19. A compound of the Formula II:



wherein:

B is independently $(C(R^2)_2)_n$;

R^1 is selected from:

- 1) H, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_2 - C_6 alkenyl, C_2 - C_6 alkynyl, C_3 -6 cycloalkyl, and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
 - a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
 - b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
 - c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 - f) $(F)_p C_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 - g) halogen,
 - h) OR^4 ,
 - i) $O(CH_2)_5 OR^4$,
 - j) CO_2R^4 ,
 - k) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$.

- l) $O(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 m) $N(R^4)(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 n) $N(R^{10})(CO)R^{11}$,
 o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
 5 p) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 q) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
 r) $S(O)_mR^{10}$,
 s) CN,
 t) $NR^{10}R^{11}$, and
 10 u) $N(R^{10})(CO)NR^4R^{11}$; and,
- 2) aryl or heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
- 15 a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
 b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
 c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 20 e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
 f) $(F)_pC_{1-3}$ alkyl,
 g) halogen,
 h) OR^4 .
 25 i) $O(CH_2)_sOR^4$,
 j) CO_2R^4 ,
 k) $(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 l) $O(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 m) $N(R^4)(CO)NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 30 n) $N(R^{10})(CO)R^{11}$,
 o) $N(R^{10})(CO)OR^{11}$,
 p) $SO_2NR^{10}R^{11}$,
 q) $N(R^{10})SO_2R^{11}$,
 r) $S(O)_mR^{10}$,

- s) CN,
- w) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$, and
- x) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})(\text{CO})\text{NR}^4\text{R}^{11}$;

5 R^2 is independently selected from:

- 1) H, $\text{C}_0\text{-C}_6$ alkyl, $\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6$ alkenyl, $\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6$ alkynyl, $\text{C}_3\text{-6}$ cycloalkyl and heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:

- a) C_{1-6} alkyl,
- 10 b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl,
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from
- 15 R^4 ,
- e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R^4 ,
- f) $(\text{F})_p\text{C}_{1-3}$ alkyl,
- 20 g) halogen,
- h) OR^4 .
- i) $\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_s\text{OR}^4$.
- j) CO_2R^4 .
- k) $(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$.
- 25 l) $\text{O}(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$.
- m) $\text{N}(\text{R}^4)(\text{CO})\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$.
- n) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})(\text{CO})\text{R}^{11}$.
- o) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})(\text{CO})\text{OR}^{11}$.
- p) $\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$.
- 30 q) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{11}$.
- r) $\text{S}(\text{O})_m\text{R}^{10}$,
- s) CN,
- t) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$, and
- u) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})(\text{CO})\text{NR}^4\text{R}^{11}$; and,

- 2) aryl or heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from:
- a) C₁₋₆ alkyl,
 - b) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl,
 - c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴,
 - d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴,
 - e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴,
 - f) (F)_pC₁₋₃ alkyl,
 - g) halogen,
 - h) OR⁴,
 - i) O(CH₂)_sOR⁴,
 - j) CO₂R⁴,
 - k) (CO)NR¹⁰R¹¹,
 - l) O(CO)NR¹⁰R¹¹,
 - m) N(R⁴)(CO)NR¹⁰R¹¹,
 - n) N(R¹⁰)(CO)R¹¹,
 - o) N(R¹⁰)(CO)OR¹¹,
 - p) SO₂NR¹⁰R¹¹,
 - q) N(R¹⁰)SO₂R¹¹,
 - r) S(O)_mR¹⁰,
 - s) CN,
 - t) NR¹⁰R¹¹, and
 - u) N(R¹⁰)(CO)NR⁴R¹¹;
- 30 R¹⁰ and R¹¹ are independently selected from: H, C₁₋₆ alkyl, (F)_pC₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, and benzyl, unsubstituted or substituted with halogen, hydroxy or C_{1-C6} alkoxy, where R¹⁰ and R¹¹ may be joined together to form a ring selected from: azetidiny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, or morpholiny, which is unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴ ;

R^4 is independently selected from: H, C₁₋₆ alkyl, (F)_pC₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl and benzyl, unsubstituted or substituted with halogen, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy;

5 W is O, NR⁴ or C(R⁴)₂;

X is C or S;

Y is O, (R⁴)₂, NCN, NSO₂CH₃, NCONH₂, or Y is O₂ when X is S;

10

R⁶ is independently selected from H and:

15

- a) C₁₋₆ alkyl,
- b) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl,
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴,
- d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴,
- e) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted with 1-5 substituents where the substituents are independently selected from R⁴,
- f) (F)_pC₁₋₃ alkyl,
- g) halogen,
- h) OR⁴.
- i) O(CH₂)_sOR⁴,
- 25 j) CO₂R⁴.
- k) (CO)NR¹⁰R¹¹,
- l) O(CO)NR¹⁰R¹¹,
- m) N(R⁴)(CO)NR¹⁰R¹¹,
- n) N(R¹⁰)(CO)R¹¹,
- 30 o) N(R¹⁰)(CO)OR¹¹,
- p) SO₂NR¹⁰R¹¹,
- q) N(R¹⁰)SO₂R¹¹,
- r) S(O)_mR¹⁰,
- s) CN,

- t) $\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$, and
 u) $\text{N}(\text{R}^{10})(\text{CO})\text{NR}^4\text{R}^{11}$;

5 G-J is selected from: N, $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2$, $\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{R}^5)$, $\text{C}=\text{N}$; $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)$, $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2$, $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2-$
 $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2$, $\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{R}^5)-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2$, $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)=\text{C}(\text{R}^5)$, $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2-\text{N}(\text{R}^5)$, $\text{C}=\text{C}(\text{R}^5)-\text{N}(\text{R}^5)$,
 $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)=\text{N}$, $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)-\text{N}(\text{R}^5)-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2$, $\text{C}=\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2$, $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)-\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{R}^5)$, $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)-\text{N}(\text{R}^5)-\text{N}(\text{R}^5)$,
 $\text{C}=\text{N}-\text{N}(\text{R}^5)$, $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2$, $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)=\text{C}(\text{R}^5)$, $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2-\text{N}(\text{R}^5)$, $\text{N}-\text{C}(\text{R}^5)=\text{N}$, $\text{N}-\text{N}(\text{R}^5)-$
 $\text{C}(\text{R}^5)_2$ and $\text{N}-\text{N}=\text{C}(\text{R}^5)$;

10 Q, T, U and V are each independently carbon or nitrogen wherein at least one but no more than three of Q, T, U and V are nitrogen, and wherein when any of Q, T, U, or V is carbon it is unsubstituted or substituted where the substituents are independently selected from R^6 ;

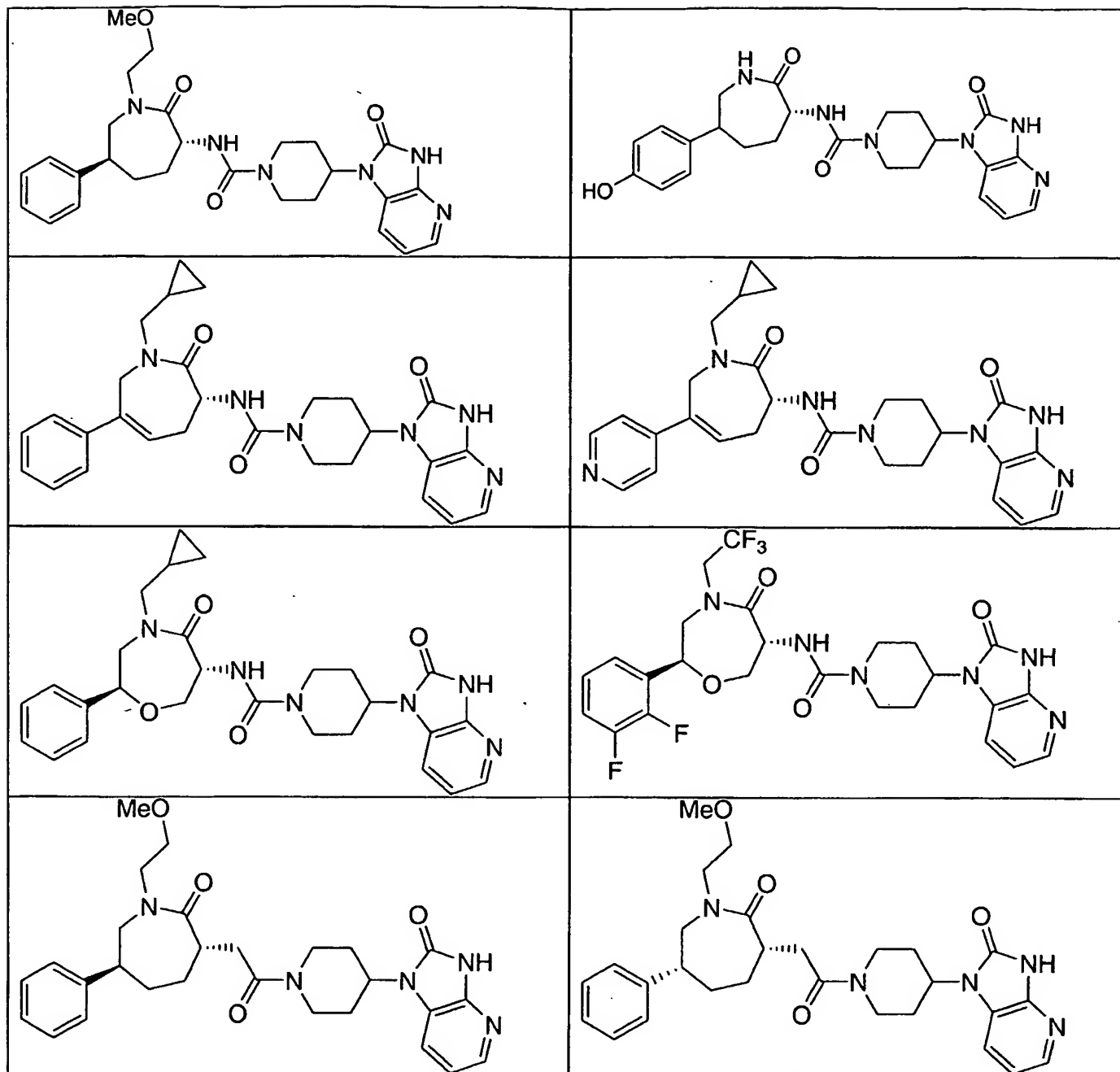
15 R^5 is independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_3 alkyl, CN, OR^4 , $\text{N}(\text{R}^4)_2$ and CO_2R^4 ;

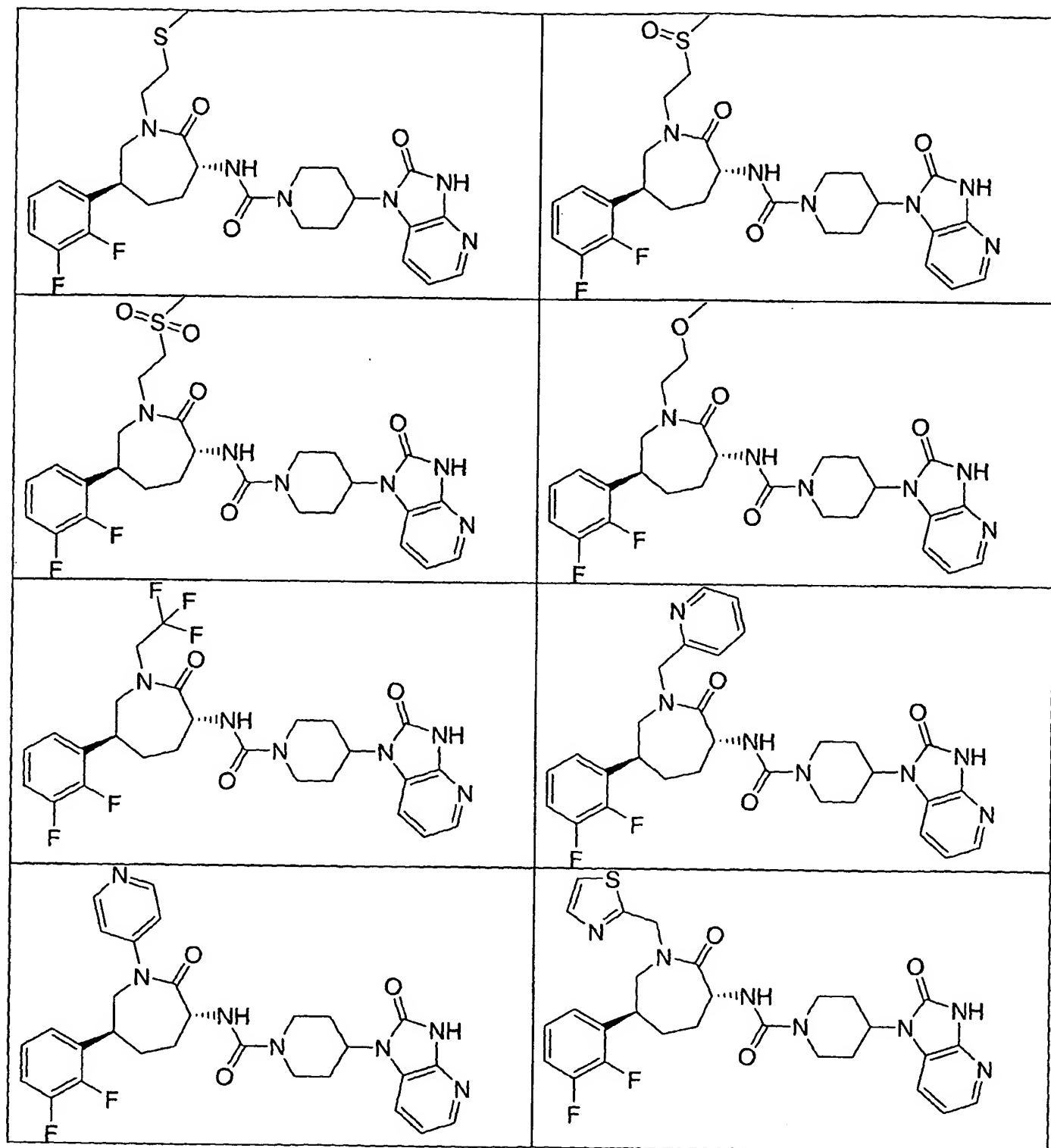
R^3 is independently selected from H, substituted or unsubstituted C_1 - C_3 alkyl, F, CN and CO_2R^4 ;

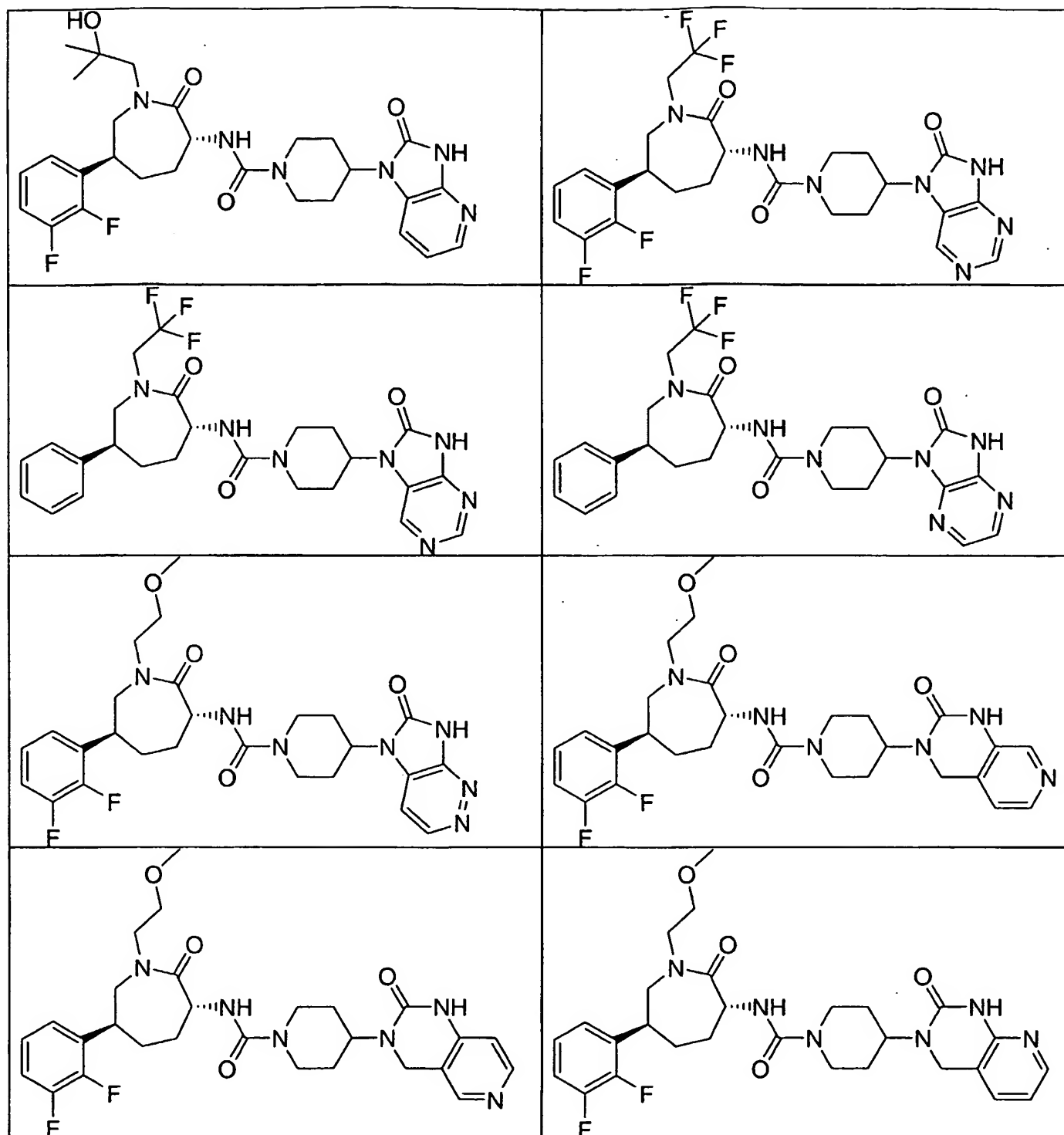
20 p is 0 to $2q+1$, for a substituent with q carbons;
 m is 0, 1 or 2;
 n is 0 or 1;
 s is 1, 2 or 3;

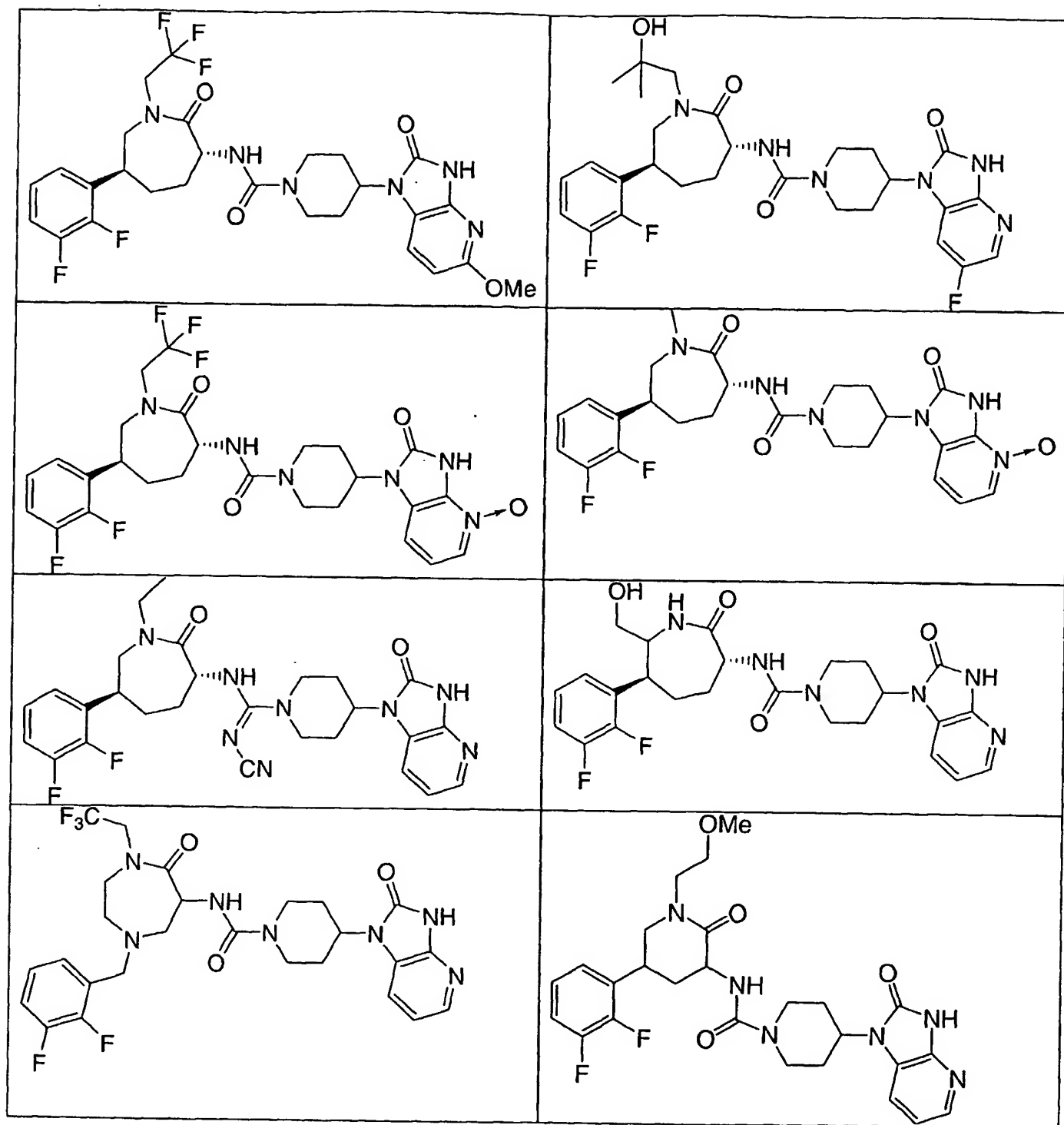
25 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual diastereomers thereof.

20. A compound selected from:



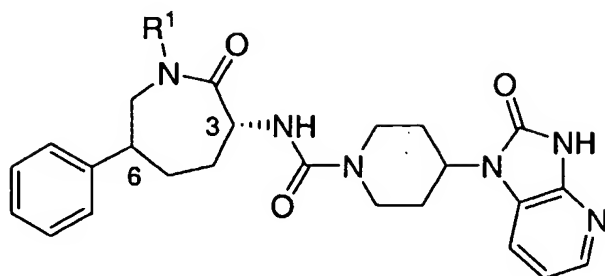




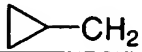
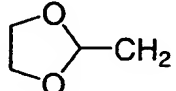


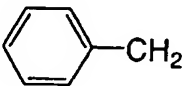
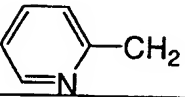
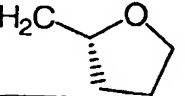
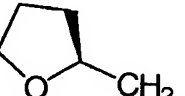
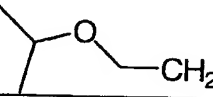

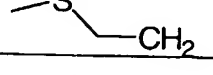
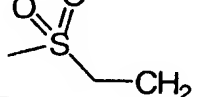
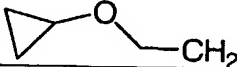
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

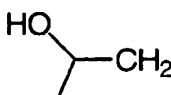
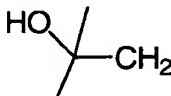
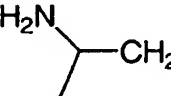
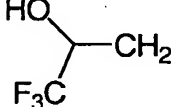
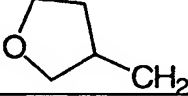
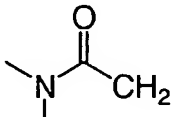
21. A compound of the formula:



wherein the configuration of the C-3 carbon, the configuration of the C-6 carbon, and R¹ are
5 selected from a single row in the following table:

C-3	C-6	R ¹
R	S	H
R	R	H
R	S	CH ₃
R	S	CH ₂ CH ₃
R	S	CH ₂ CF ₃
R	S	CH ₂ CO ₂ CH ₃
R	S	CH ₂ CO ₂ H
R	S	(CH ₂) ₂ OCH ₂ CH ₃
R	S	CH ₂ CN
R	S	(CH ₂) ₂ OH
R	S	
R	S	

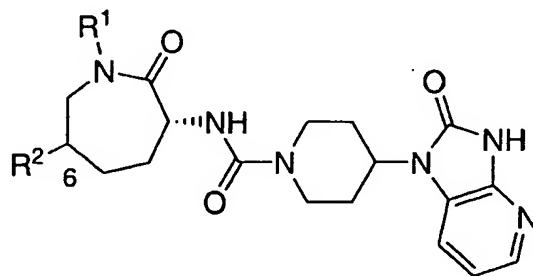
R	S	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{F}$
R	S	CH_2CHF_2
R	S	CH_2CHCF_2
R	S	
R	S	
R	S	
R	S	
R	S	$\text{H}_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}_2$
R	S	
R	S	
R	S	
R	S	
R	S	$(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{OCF}_3$
R	S	

R	S	
R	S	
R	S	
R	S	
R	S	
R	S	Ph
R	S	

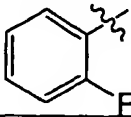
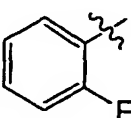
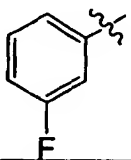
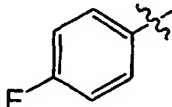
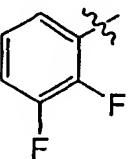
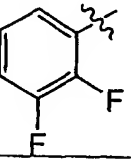
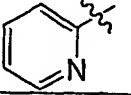
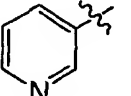
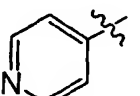
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

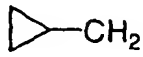
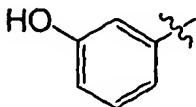
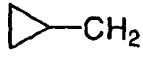
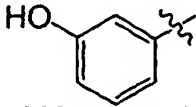
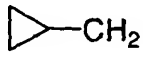
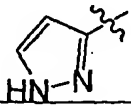
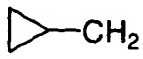
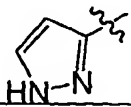
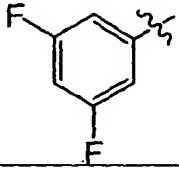
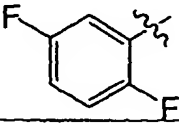
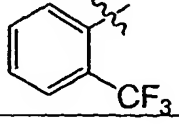
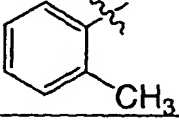
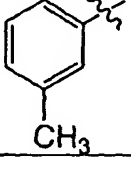
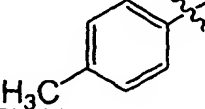
22. A compound of the formula:

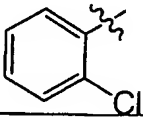
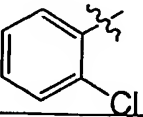
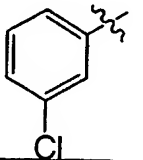

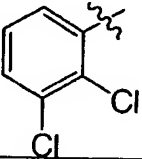
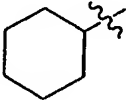
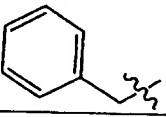
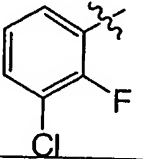
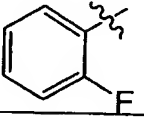
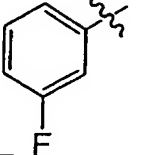
5

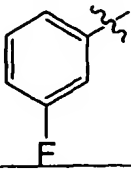
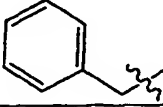
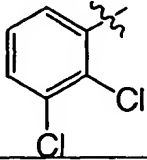
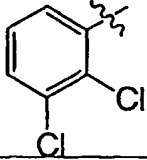
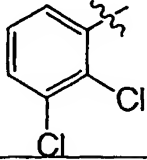
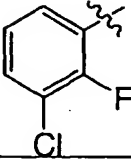
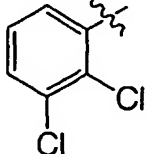


wherein the configuration of the C-6 carbon, and R¹ and R² are selected from a single row in the following table:

C-6	R ¹	R ²
R or S	H	
S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	

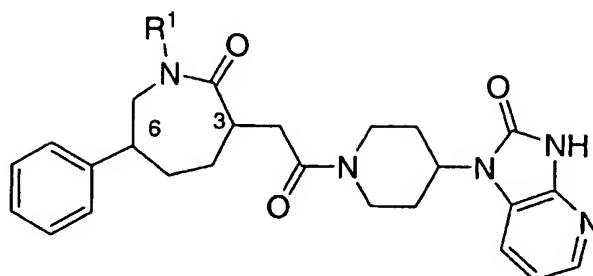
R or S		
S		
S		
R		
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	

R or S	H	
S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
R or S	H	
S	Et	
S	CH ₂ CH ₂ F	

S	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OMe}$	
R or S	Et	
R or S	Me	
S	Me	
S	Et	
R or S	Et	
R or S	CH_2CF_3	

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

23. A compound of the formula:



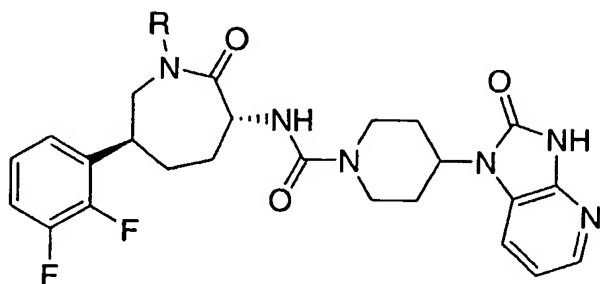
5 wherein the configuration of the C-3 carbon, the configuration of the C-6 carbon, and R¹ are selected from a single row in the following table:

C-3	C-6	R¹
R	S	
S	R	
R	R	
S	S	

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

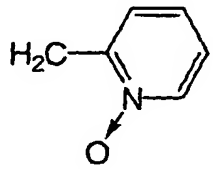
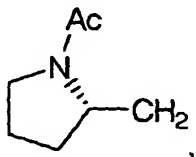
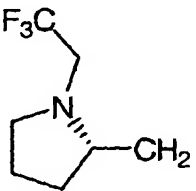
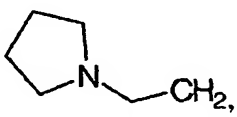
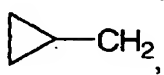
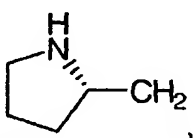
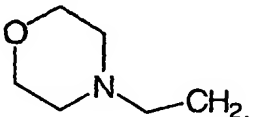
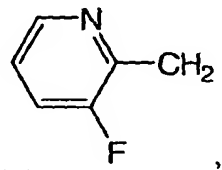
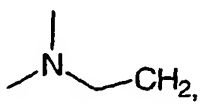
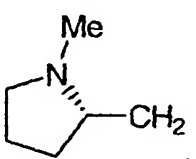
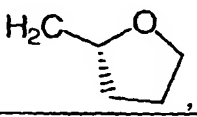
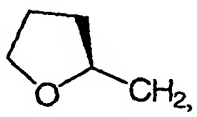
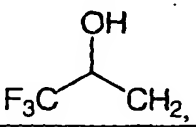
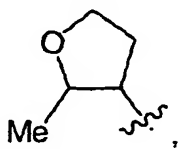
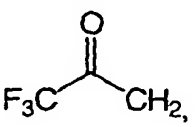
10

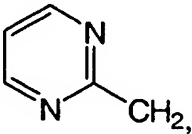
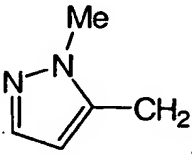
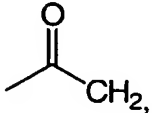
24. A compound of the formula:



15

wherein R is selected from:

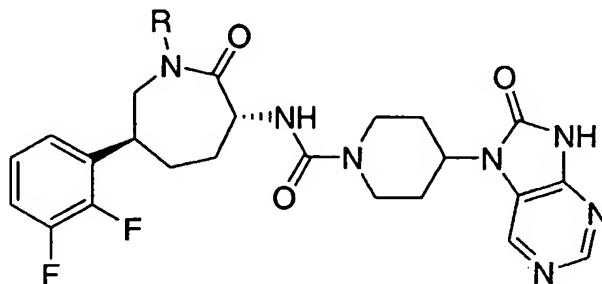
	CH_3 ,	
$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{SO}_2\text{CH}_3$,	CH_2CH_3 ,	
		
	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{F}$,	
	CH_2CHF_2 ,	
$\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$,		$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$,
$\text{H}_2\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}_2$,		
	$\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3$,	

		$\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$, and
		

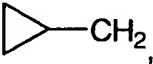
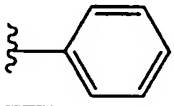
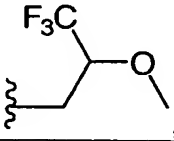
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

25. A compound of the formula:

5

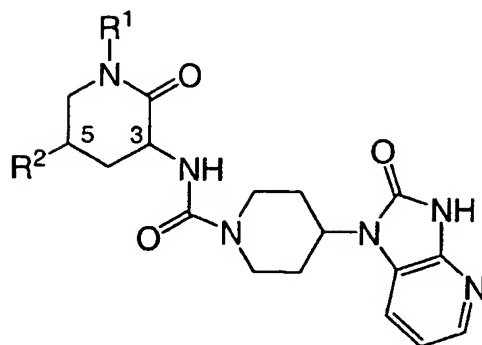


wherein R is selected from:

CH_3 ,	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{SOCH}_3$,	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{SCH}_3$,
	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{SO}_2\text{CH}_3$,	
CH_2CHF_2 ,	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_3$,	
$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCF}_3$, and	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$,	

10 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

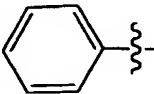
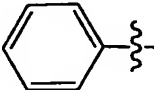
26. A compound of the formula:



wherein the configuration of the C-3 carbon, the configuration of the C-5 carbon, R^1 and R^2 are selected from a single row in the following table:

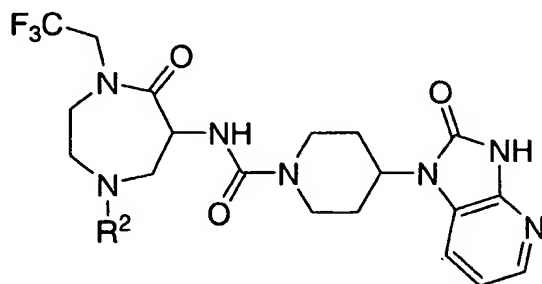
5

C-3	C-5	R^1	R^2
R or S	R or S	$\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_3$	
R or S	R or S	CH_3	
R or S	R or S	CH_3	
R or S	R or S	CH_2CF_3	
R or S	R or S	CH_2CF_3	
R	R	CH_2CF_3	
R	S	CH_2CF_3	

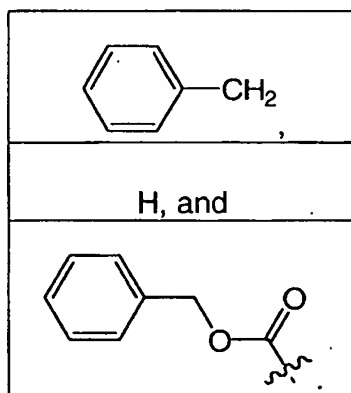
S	R	CH ₂ CF ₃	
S	S	CH ₂ CF ₃	

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

27. A compound of the formula:



wherein R² is selected from:



and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and individual stereoisomers thereof.

28. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises an inert carrier and the compound of Claim 1.

29. The use of the compound of Claim 1 for the preparation of a medicament useful in the treatment of headache, migraine or cluster headache.

(19) World Intellectual Property
Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
28 October 2004 (28.10.2004)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2004/092166 A3

(51) International Patent Classification⁷: **C07D 471/04**,
A61K 31/4188, A61P 25/06

(21) International Application Number:
PCT/US2004/010851

(22) International Filing Date: 9 April 2004 (09.04.2004)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
60/463,089 15 April 2003 (15.04.2003) US
60/510,352 10 October 2003 (10.10.2003) US

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): **MERCK & CO., INC.** [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): **BURGEY, Christopher, S.** [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US). **DENG, Zhengwu, J.** [CN/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US). **NGUYEN, Diem, N.** [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US). **PAONE, Daniel, V.** [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ

07065-0907 (US). **SHAW, Anthony, W.** [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US). **WILLIAMS, Theresa, M.** [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US).

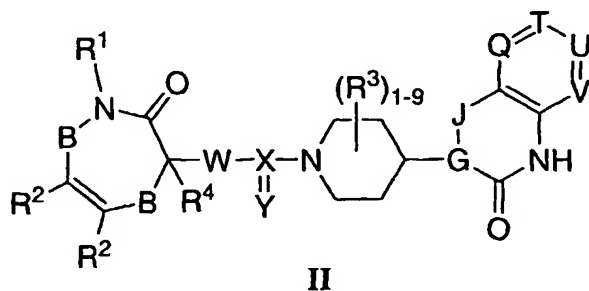
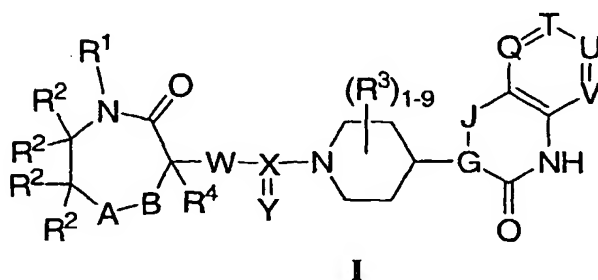
(74) Common Representative: **MERCK & CO., INC.**; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065-0907 (US).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: CGRP RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS



(57) Abstract: The present invention is directed to compounds of Formula (I) and Formula (II) (where variables R1, R2, R3, R4, A, B, G, J, Q, T, U, V, W, X and Y are as defined herein) useful as antagonists of CGRP receptors and useful in the treatment or prevention of diseases in which the CGRP is involved, such as headache, migraine and cluster headache. The invention is also directed to pharmaceutical compositions comprising these compounds and the use of these compounds and compositions in the prevention or treatment of such diseases in which CGRP is involved.



Published:

— *with international search report*

(88) Date of publication of the international search report:

20 January 2005

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inte	pplication No
PC	104/010851

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 7 C07D471/04 A61K31/4188 A61P25/06

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07D

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, BEILSTEIN Data

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO 00/18764 A (HILL RAYMOND GEORGE ; MERCK SHARP & DOHME (GB); PATCHETT ARTHUR A (US)) 6 April 2000 (2000-04-06) claim 1	1-29
A	MALLEE J J ET AL: "Receptor Activity-modifying Protein 1 Determines the Species Selectivity of Non-peptide CGRP Receptor Antagonists" JOURNAL OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY, AMERICAN SOCIETY OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTS, BALTIMORE, MD, US, vol. 277, no. 16, 19 April 2002 (2002-04-19), pages 14294-14298, XP002271313 ISSN: 0021-9258 the whole document	1-29

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

- *A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- *E* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- *L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- *O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- *P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- *T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- *X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- *Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- *Z* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

6 October 2004

Date of mailing of the international search report

19/10/2004

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentkan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,
Fax (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Baston, E

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int'l Application No
PCT/US2004/010851

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
P, A	WO 03/104236 A (CHATURVEDULA PRASAD V ; CONWAY CHARLES MARK (US); KARAGEORGE GEORGE N) 18 December 2003 (2003-12-18) claim 1	1-29
A	----- VAN ROSSUM, D., HANISCH, U.K. QUIRION, R.: "Neuroanatomical Localization, Pharmacological Characterization and Functions of CGRP, related peptides and Their Receptors" NEUROSCIENCE AND BEHAVIORAL REVIEWS, vol. 21, no. 5, 1997, pages 649-678, XP002299339 the whole document -----	1-29

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int. Application No.
PCT/JP04/010851

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 0018764	A	06-04-2000	AU 6211499 A	17-04-2000
			CA 2345357 A1	06-04-2000
			EP 1117662 A1	25-07-2001
			WO 0018764 A1	06-04-2000
			JP 2002525371 T	13-08-2002
			US 6552043 B1	22-04-2003
WO 03104236	A	18-12-2003	WO 03104236 A1	18-12-2003
			US 2004063735 A1	01-04-2004

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)